



**HOW TO KNOW**

**THE  
IMMATURE  
INSECTS**

**H. F. CHU**



GL  
468  
C 42







# How To Know

---

## THE IMMATURE INSECTS

An illustrated key for identifying the orders and families of many of the immature insects with suggestions for collecting, rearing and studying them.

**H. F. CHU, Ph.D.**

*Zoologist, Institute of Zoology,  
National Academy of Peiping,  
Peiping, China*

1946-47 Visiting Professor  
Iowa Wesleyan College



M. C. BROWN COMPANY PUBLISHERS  
Dubuque, Iowa

MBL/WHO1  
0 0301 0016868 8

244



Copyright © 1949 by

H. E. Jaques

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number A50-2933

ISBN 0-697-04807-1 (cloth)

ISBN 0-697-04806-3 (paper)

## THE PICTURED-KEY NATURE SERIES

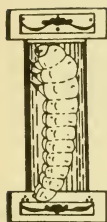
### How To Know The—

- AQUATIC PLANTS**, Prescott, 1969
- BETLES**, Jaques, 1951
- BUTTERFLIES**, Ehrlich, 1961
- CACTI**, Dawson, 1963
- EASTERN LAND SNAILS**, Burch, 1962
- ECONOMIC PLANTS**, Jaques, 1948, 1958
- FALL FLOWERS**, Cuthbert, 1948
- FRESHWATER ALGAE**, Prescott, 1954, 1970
- FRESHWATER FISHES**, Eddy, 1957, 1969
- GRASSES**, Pohl, 1953, 1968
- GRASSHOPPERS**, Helfer, 1963
- IMMATURE INSECTS**, Chu, 1949
- INSECTS**, Jaques, 1947
- LAND BIRDS**, Jaques, 1947
- LICHENS**, Hale, 1969
- LIVING THINGS**, Jaques, 1946
- MAMMALS**, Booth, 1949, 1970
- MARINE ISOPOD CRUSTACEANS**, Schultz, 1969
- MOSSES AND LIVERWORTS**, Conard, 1944, 1956
- PLANT FAMILIES**, Jaques, 1948
- POLLEN AND SPORES**, Kapp, 1969
- PROTOZOA**, Jahn, 1949
- ROCKS AND MINERALS**, Helfer, 1970
- SEAWEEDS**, Dawson, 1956
- SPIDERS**, Kaston, 1952
- SPRING FLOWERS**, Cuthbert, 1943, 1949
- TAPEWORMS**, Schmidt, 1970
- TREMATODES**, Schell, 1970
- TREES**, Jaques, 1946
- WATER BIRDS**, Jaques-Ollivier, 1960
- WEEDS**, Jaques, 1959
- WESTERN TREES**, Baerg, 1955

Printed in United States of America



## INTRODUCTION



**I**NSECTS constitute the largest group of the animal kingdom. There are over seven hundred thousand species which have been named and described and still a large number of new species is being added to our knowledge every year. Because of the great diversity of their behavior and habits, their study is filled with interest. From the economic point of view, some insects are considered beneficial and others injurious to human beings. The better we know our insect enemies and insect friends, the better are our chances of anticipating protections or of preparing and conducting our defenses against them.

Insects are highly different in their young and their adult stages. For example, the butterflies fly in air and feed on nectar of flowers while their caterpillars live on plants and chew these coarse tissues; mosquitoes suck blood while their larvae dwell in water; many moths do not feed at all but their larvae do great damage to our crops. There are thousands of differences in their ways of living and also of the body structures between insect parents and their children. We need to know the adult insects and it is also necessary to know the immature insects. From either the economic standpoint or the evolutionary aspect the more we know of the immature stages the better we understand the adult insects.

Unfortunately our knowledge of the immature insects is still far away from complete. Much work must still be done in this interesting and very important field. This book is compiled from the available literature and designed to make it as easy as possible to acquire a ready knowledge of the immature insects. It contains a number of illustrated keys for identification of these insects to orders and their principal families. For advanced study, important references are given. In attempting this book the author feels like an explorer entering an uncharted region. At best there will be omissions and mistakes. I shall be grateful for any corrections or constructive suggestions to put into later printings of the book.

The excellent instruction of Dr. W. P. Hayes, Professor of Entomology, University of Illinois on the immature insects during the time

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

when the author was a student in his classes has made the book possible. Dr. H. E. Jaques, Professor of Biology, Iowa Wesleyan College, has given encouragement and invaluable suggestions. My wife, Y. S. Liu has helped with drawings and in many other ways. The author wishes to thank them most sincerely for all their kind help.

Peiping, China  
January 1, 1949

*N. A. Chu*  
朱弘毅

We have found Dr. Chu not only a thoroughly trained Entomologist and an excellent teacher but also a most faithful friend. He has given much time and thought to the preparation of this manual in a comparative new and difficult field. We feel certain that students of insects will find it highly helpful.

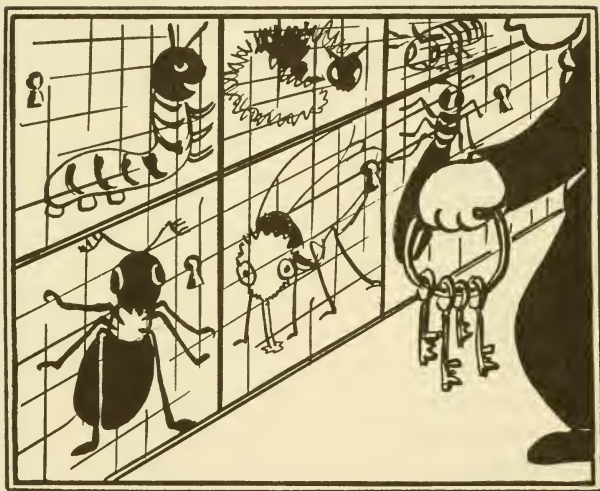
*H. E. Jaques*

## CONTENTS

	Page
What Are Immature Insects.....	1
The Importance of Immature Insects.....	3
What Immature Insects Look Like.....	6
Where to Collect Immature Insects.....	19
How to Collect Immature Insects.....	21
How to Rear Immature Insects.....	26
Pictured-Keys to Orders of Immature Insects.....	28
Pictured-Keys to Families.....	54
Order Protura .....	54
Order Thysanura .....	55
Order Collembola .....	58
Order Plecoptera .....	59
Order Ephemeroptera .....	62
Order Odonata .....	67
Order Orthoptera .....	69
Order Coleoptera .....	72
Order Hemiptera .....	129
Order Homoptera .....	135
Order Neuroptera .....	140
Order Trichoptera .....	146
Order Lepidoptera .....	149
Order Diptera .....	189
Order Hymenoptera .....	210
Some Important References.....	217
Index and Pictured Glossary.....	224



讀 照 囊 妙



寄 蜉 蝣 於 天 地  
 渺 滄 海 之 一 粟

# WHAT ARE IMMATURE INSECTS

**DEVELOPMENT OF INSECTS.** — When an egg and a sperm unite to form one cell fertilization results and the embryo begins to develop within the eggshell. This is called *embryonic development* and all that takes place after hatching or birth is *postembryonic development*. The life cycle is completed when the insect is fully grown and capable of producing young.

**METAMORPHOSIS.** — The term metamorphosis is derived from the Greek words, *meta*, change, and *morphe*, form, designating a change of form. The plural is *metamorphoses*. It is defined as the series of changes through which an insect passes in its growth from the egg through the larva and pupa to the adult, or from the egg through the nymph to the adult.

a) *Gradual or simple metamorphosis.* — In many insect species the

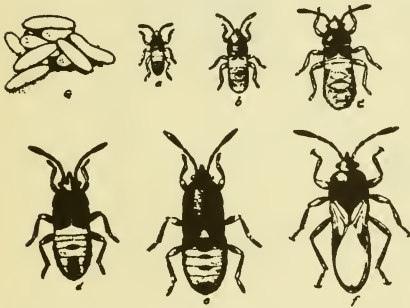


Fig. 1. The life stages of chinch bug, *Blissus leucopterus* (Say): a-e, 1st to 5th instar nymphs; f, adult; g, eggs. (U.S.D.A.)

young are very much similar to the adult externally, except for the complete absence of wings. But after a period of growth the wing may appear, attached to the outside of the body as small wing pads. The more developed the young insect becomes, the more it resembles its parents. Such a development is called a *gradual or simple metamorphosis*. The young of such insects are called *nymphs*. They commonly have the same habits as their parents and the nymphs and adults frequently feed together. An example is the aphids where both adult and young are habitually found associated on the same plant. Grasshopper nymphs and adults both eat grasses and clovers and may be found hopping about together in the pastures. The insects of gradual or simple metamorphosis include the orders Plecoptera, Ephemeroptera, Odonata, Embioptera, Orthoptera, Isoptera, Dermaptera, Thysanoptera, Corrodentia, Mallophaga, Anoplura, Hemiptera and Homoptera. All these insects are collectively known as the *Heterometabola*.

b) *Complete or complex metamorphosis.* — In this type of metamorphosis, the young are very different from their adults. There are no external traces of wings. The young are known as *larvae* and the adult is preceded by a pupal stage. The insects having this type of metamorphosis are collectively called the *Holometabola* and include the orders Coleoptera, Neuroptera, Trichoptera, Lepidoptera, Mecoptera, Diptera, Siphonaptera, Strepsiptera and Hymenoptera.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

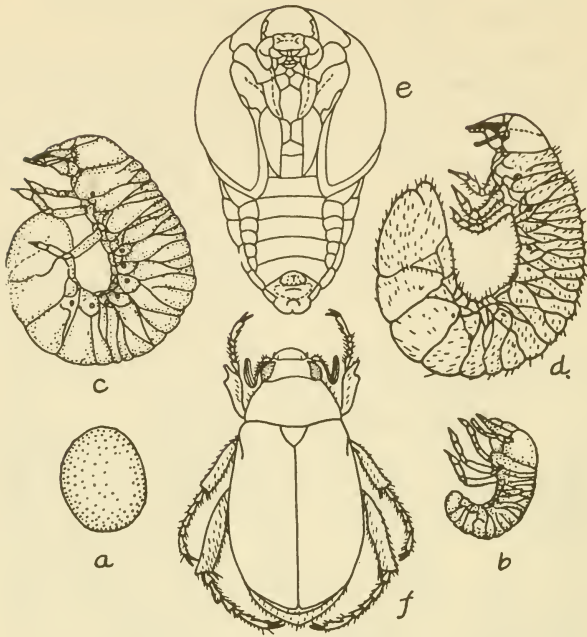


Fig. 2. The life stages of *Anomala kansana* Hayes & McColloch: a, egg; b-d, 1st to 3rd instar larvae; e, pupa; f, adult. (Redrawn from Hayes)

c) *No metamorphosis* or *Ametabola*. — The insect of this type of metamorphosis have no distinct external changes in development, except in size. When the young hatches from the egg it resembles its parents and scarcely shows any changes in appearance during the course of development. This is especially true of a small number of wingless insects belonging to the orders Protura, Thysanura and Collembola.

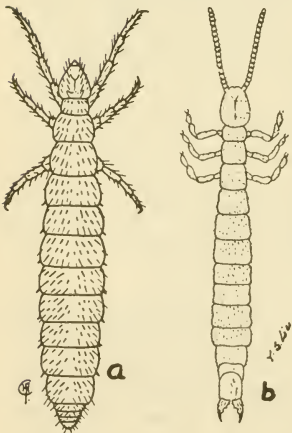


Fig. 3. a, Protura; b, Thysanura.

These insects shed their outer coat (molt) from time to time to permit more comfortable growth, but all of these successive stages appear very much the same except in size. Some would call these immature stages "nymphs" but "young" seems to be a more accurate and preferred term.



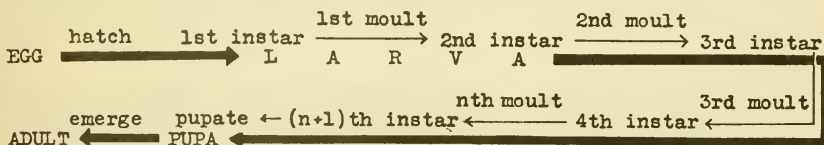
## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

Metamorphosis	Life Stage			
Heterometabola or Gradual metamorphosis	Egg	Nymph		Adult
Holometabola or Complete metamorphosis	Egg	Larva	Pupa	Adult
Ametabola or No metamorphosis	Egg	Young		Adult

Fig. 4. Metamorphosis and life stages.

**IMMATURE INSECTS.** — From the previous figure of the insect life stages, insects are seen to have *two* or *three* stages before they become adult or imago. The stages, *egg*, *young (nymph or larva)* and *pupa* are the immature stages of insects. We must consider all the life stages which precede the adult stage.

**INSTARS.** — Every insect during its growth sheds its skin one or more times. This process is known as a *moult* or *ecdysis*. The cast skin is termed the *exuviae* (this term does not exist in the singular). The intervals between moults are known as *stages* or *stadia* (singular, *stadium*), and the form assumed by an insect during a particular stadium is termed an *instar*. When an insect issues from the egg it is said to be in its *first instar*; at the end of this stadium the first moult occurs and the insect then assumes its *second instar*, and so on. The final instar is represented by the fully mature form and is known as the *adult* or *imago*.



$$\text{NUMBER OF INSTARS} = \text{number of moults} + 1$$

Fig. 5. Life stages and instars.

## THE IMPORTANCE OF IMMATURE INSECTS

**NUMBER OF SPECIES OF INSECTS.** — According to Z. P. Metcalf (*Ent. News* 51: 219-222, 1940), approximately 1,500,000 species have been described during the period from 1758 to 1940. This would make the insects occupy almost eighty per cent of the species of the whole animal kingdom.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

IMMATURE STAGES OCCUPY A LARGER PART OF THE LIFE CYCLE. — The egg stage usually lasts but a few days, sometimes even shorter, or the egg may hatch before it is laid, as is the case in

the aphids. Many insects hibernate in the egg stage in which event the egg period may last several months. The growing stage is usually much longer than other stages. The nymph of the periodical cicada, *Magicalcica septendecim* (L.) Lives underground from 13 to 17 years as compared with the 30 or 40 days of its adult's life and 6 to 7 weeks of its egg stage. While some Mayflies live as adults for only a few hours, their nymphal stage is believed to occupy three years. Many insects spend their winter time in



Fig. 6. Life cycle of the Japanese beetle, *Popillia japonica* Newman.

the pupal stage. In general, insects spend considerably more time in their immature stages than they do as adults.

LARVA AND NYMPH ARE HEAVIER FEEDERS. — When a survey of the feeding habits of insects is made, the nymphs are usually found to take the same kind of food as their adults. Larvae on the other hand, usually feed differently and consume much more than their adults. Take the order Lepidoptera as a good example; the caterpillars eat a large quantity of food while a good number of moths do not feed at all.

ANIMAL EVOLUTION AND ADAPTION. — The zoological position of some animals that are of degenerate form in the adult stages has been established only by study of their embryonic and larval stages. The larvae of barnacles show that these animals belong among the crustaceans, and the peculiar parasitic barnacle, *Sacculina* can be recognized as a crustacean only during its larval existence. Likewise, the tunicates were found to be Chordates only by a study of their larval characteristics. The adults of the Coniopterygidae look like aphids but are regarded as Neuroptera because of the structures of their larvae. The degenerate form of the adults gives no clue to their real position among animals. Among insects there are many highly interesting points to study in their evolution and adaptation. A knowledge of the immature stages makes for a much clearer understanding in both of these fields.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

**INSECT CONTROL.** — The injurious insects give us a clear idea of the importance of immature insects. It is the larvae of the Codling moth, *Carpocapsa pomonella* Linne, for example which feed on our apples, not the adult moths. The maggots of the Mediterranean fruit-fly, *Ceratitis capitata* (Wiedeman), do serious damages to fruits, but the adult flies except for laying eggs are quite inoffensive. Note also the Gypsy moth, *Porthetria dispar* (L.), the Browntail moth, *Nygmia phaeorrhoea* (Donovan), and many Wire worms (Elateridae), White grubs (Scarabaeidae), Cut worms (Noctuidae); their larvae cost us millions of dollars every year. We need to know the morphological structures, life histories and habits of the immature insects in order to successfully conduct measures for their control.

### WHAT IMMATURE INSECTS LOOK LIKE

#### EGGS

Insects develop from eggs which differ greatly in size and shape in different species. As a rule, insects tend to lay eggs proportionate to their own size. The smallest known eggs are those of the Collembola. The eggs of one of the small headed flies measure 0.15 by 0.18 millimeter. The eggs of the clover seed midge and of the Tingidae are also minute. The other extreme is found in the eggs of the giant silk moth, those of the polyphemus moth being 3 millimeters in diameter.

The shapes of insect eggs are described in the following:



(a) Flat and scalelike (Fig. 7).—Take for example the eggs of the codling moth and the oriental fruit moth.

Fig. 7. Eggs of the codling moth, *Carpocapsa pomonella* L.

(b) Spherical (Fig. 8).—The eggs of many species, such as the swallow-tail butterfly, the green june beetle and many other Scarabaeidae are spherical.



Fig. 8. Eggs of a butterfly.



Fig. 9. Eggs of the fall armyworm, *Lophygma frugiperda* (Smith & Abbott).

(c) Conical (Fig. 9).—The eggs of the imported cabbage worm, *Pieris rapae* (L.) and the violet tip, *Polygonia interrogationis* Fab., are conical in shape and deeply ridged.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

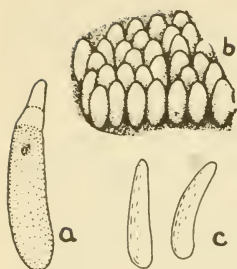


Fig. 10. Eggs: a, sugarcane leafhopper, *Perkinsiella saccharicida* Kirkaldy; b, Mexican bean beetle, *Epilachna varivestis* Mulsant; c, housefly, *Musca domestica* L.

(d) Elongate (Fig. 10).—Many eggs are elongate, as for example, the eggs of leafhoppers, treehoppers and tree crickets.

Eggs of this type are often inserted in narrow cavities such as hollow grass stems or in burrows made with the ovipositor or lend themselves readily to being laid in compact groups.

(e) With appendages (Fig. 11).—The eggs of a water scorpion have eight or more filaments radiating from the upper rim. Pentatomid eggs are usually beset with a circle of spines around the upper edge. Reduviid eggs have a definite cap at one end. The poultry louse has a striking egg,—white and covered with glass-like spines. The free end of this egg is furnished with a lid which bears at its apex a long lashlike appendage.

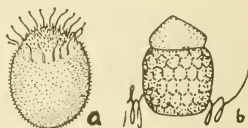


Fig. 11. Eggs: a, *Podisus maculiventris* Say; b, Mayfly, *Tricorythodes allectus* (Needham).

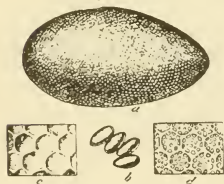


Fig. 12. a, Egg of the Western 12-spotted cucumber beetle; b, egg mass; c-d, sculpture of egg. (From Webster)

(f) With sculpturing (Figs. 12 and 13).—The surfaces of insect eggs may be entirely smooth or with imbricated designs. Eggs that are laid in wood, leaves, or in the ground are frequently without sculpturing. The eggs of Curculionidae and Scarabaeidae are perfectly smooth. On the other hand, many eggs are reticulated or strikingly marked.

These reticulations are the imprints of the cells of the follicular epithelium. The eggs of the flower flies are chalky white and microscopically sculptured. The leaf-mining flies (Genus *Pegomya*) usually have eggs that are well marked by hexagonal or polygonal areas. The eggs of many butterflies and moths such as Pieridae, Noctuidae, etc. are deeply ridged and strongly sculptured.

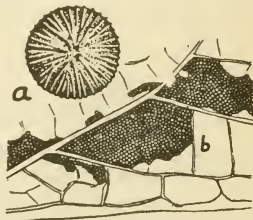


Fig. 13. *Peridroma saucia* Hubner: a, egg; b, egg mass.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

**NUMBER OF EGGS.** — The sheep-tick and the true female of many aphids, for instance, produce but a few eggs (as few as 4). On the other hand, the egg mass of the dobsonfly may contain 3,000 eggs, and a parasitic fly, *Pterodontia flavipes* (Cyrtidae) has been reported as laying 3,977 eggs. The social insects lead the list. A termite queen may lay 1,000,000 eggs during her life. Queen ants and queen honey bees likewise are highly prolific.

**WHERE THE EGGS ARE LAID** — The whole story of where insects

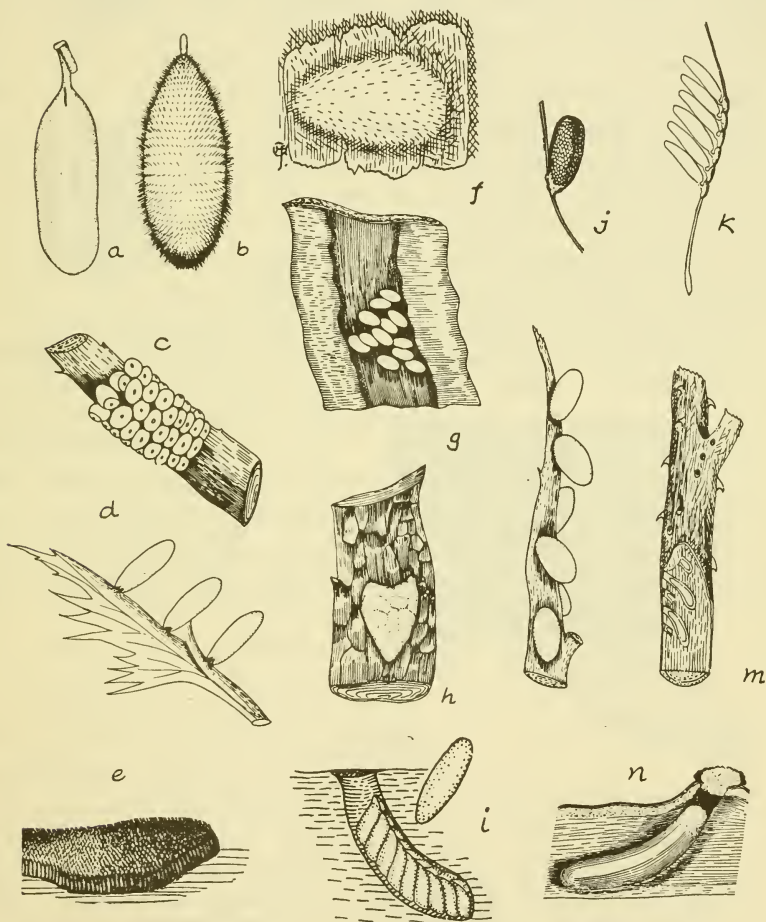


Fig. 14. Eggs: a, Boll-weevil parasite, *Cerambycobius cyaniceps*; b, Boll-weevil parasite, *Eurytoma tylodermatis* Ashm.; c, Range caterpillar; d, Asparagus beetle, *Crioceris asparagi* (L.); e, egg mass of *Culex pungens* Wiedemann; f, egg mass of the gypsy moth, *Porthetria dispar* (L.); g, Rosy apple aphid; h, apple leaf roller; i, grasshopper; j, sheep louse; k, *Hypoderma lineata* (De Villiers); l, katydid; m, Snow tree cricket; n, *Oecanthus niveus* (De Geer)

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

lay their eggs is a complicated one, but very interesting. Insect eggs are generally laid in situations where the young, upon hatching, may readily find food. Species that feed upon foliage usually lay their eggs upon leaves of the correct plant. The ability of adult to recognize the right species of food plant for its offspring often seems remarkable. Aquatic insects lay their eggs in or near the water. Parasites generally lay their eggs upon or within their host. Some flower flies lay their eggs in clusters of aphids or other soft-bodied insects. The Mallophaga and Anoplura lay their eggs upon the hair or feather of their hosts. There are also many special cases. Some insects lay their eggs upon foliage or in the ground and the young are compelled to seek their hosts. The twisted-winged insects (Stylopids) often lay their young upon plants where they must wait until certain solitary bees visit these plants. The young then grasp the legs of the bees and are carried to nests where they find their hosts. The eggs of walkingsticks lie dormant beneath leaves or other debris upon the ground. With the approach of Spring, the eggs hatch and the nymphs must find the leaves of their host plants. Insects such as leafhoppers and aphids, many of which feed upon herbaceous annual plants during the summer, seek woody plants on which to lay their eggs when winter approaches. Many leaf-mining insects of the orders Lepidoptera, Hymenoptera, Coleoptera and Diptera insert their eggs into wood, leaves, fruits and seeds, thus offering ready access to food for the young when they hatch. The Fruit Flies and many Snout Beetles insert their eggs directly into the fruit in which their larvae will develop. The tree crickets, treehoppers and leafhoppers lay their eggs within woody plants for

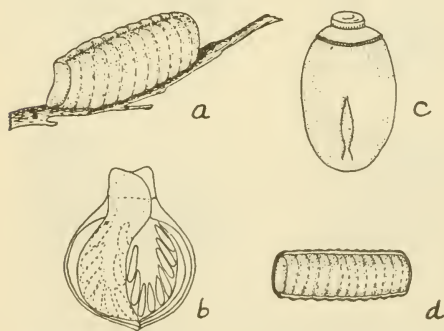


Fig. 15. Oothecae: a, Mantid; b, cross-section of mantid ootheca; c, phasmid; d, German cockroach.

protection of the eggs. Some Chalcids oviposit in seeds. Insect eggs are sometimes carried by the adult for better protection. The Hydrophilid beetles of the subfamily Sphaeridiinae carry the eggs attached to their hind legs. Certain Mayflies may carry two eggs adhering to the posterior end of the body until opportunity is found to drop them into the water. Roaches often carry an egg case (ootheca) at the tip of the abdomen. The females of the



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

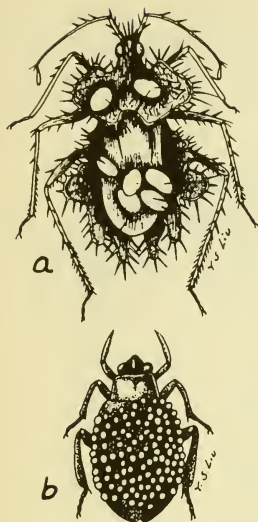


Fig. 16. Eggs on the back of male insects: a, *Phylalomorpha laciniata*; b, Western water bug, *Abedus* sp.

giant water bugs, *Belostoma*, *Serphe*s and *Abedus* deposit their eggs on the back of males where they remain until hatched. Some most interesting cases are those insects which impose upon other species. The water boatman, *Ramphocorixa acuminata*, attaches its eggs to the body of a crayfish. The human bot fly, *Dermatobia hominis*, uses the mosquito to transport its eggs to man. The botfly visits marshy places where mosquitoes are emerging. It seizes a mosquito and deposits 10 to 12 eggs on the abdomen and legs of the mosquito, after which it releases its hold. When the mosquito visits man, the warmth of his body causes the botfly eggs to hatch and the young maggots dig into the flesh of the victim. The females of the European beetle, *Clythra quadrimaculata*, deposit their eggs on the foliage of birch or other trees. These are covered with excrement and resemble small bracts of the plant. The ants pick these up apparently mistaking them for bits of vegetable refuse, and take them into their nests. When the eggs hatch the larvae

live in the ant's nest as guests (called *inquilines*).

The ravenous larvae known as aphid lions hatch from eggs held erect on slender threads (fig. 17) and are thus supposedly prevented from eating the unhatched eggs.

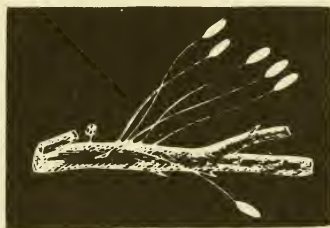


Fig. 17. Eggs of the aphid lion.

## NYMPHS

The term nymph is obtained from the Greek word meaning bride or maiden. In mythology, a nymph was one of the inferior deities of Nature, represented by a beautiful maiden, who inhabited the mountains, forests and water. In entomology, a nymph is one of the immature instars of insects with a gradual metamorphosis. The immature stages of Orthoptera, Isoptera, Hemiptera, Homoptera, Thysanoptera, Anoplura, Dermaptera, Mallophaga and Corrodentia are known as nymphs. Nymphs have certain characters in common. The wings develop on the exterior of the body (some in the later instars). Compound eyes are usually present, and the species are mostly terrestrial.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

They have no resting stage (pupae) before the adult is reached. The body form and structures as well as the feeding habits are generally similar to those of the adult.

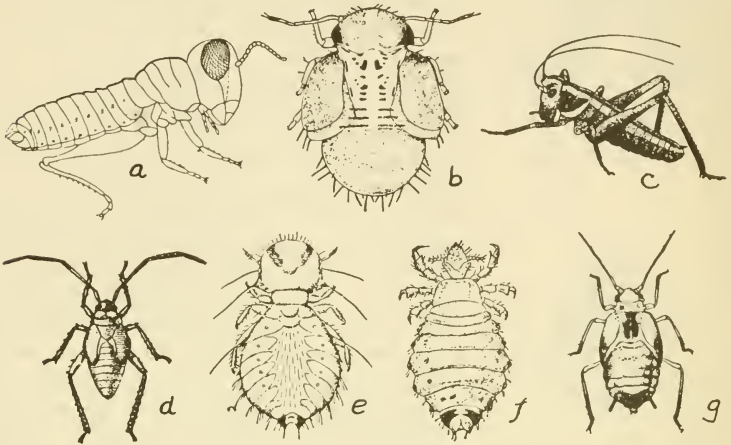


Fig. 18. Nymphs: a, grasshopper; b, pear psylla, *Psylla pyricola* Forster; (Redrawn from Conn. Agr. Expt. Sta.) c, Western cricket, *Anabrus simplex* Haldeman; d, plant bug; e, Mallophaga; f, Anoplura; g, aphid.

In the Thysanoptera, there is no indication of wing pads until the second or third instar. In Corrodentia, the nymphs lack wing pads even in species that develop wings. In Thysanoptera and the male

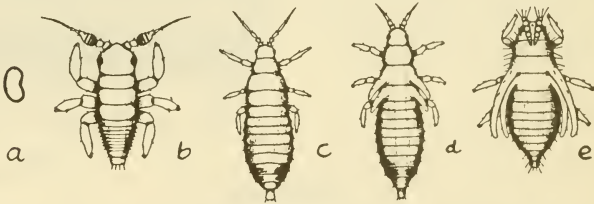


Fig. 19. Bean thrips, *Hercothrips fasciatus* (Pergande): a, egg; b, newly hatched nymph; c, mature nymph; d, prepupa; e, pupa. (U.S.D.A.)

Aleyrodidae and Coccidae, there is what appears to be a pupa. In the male Coccidae, even a cocoon is formed. The nymphs of Noto-nectidae, Corixidae, Belostomidae, Nepidae and some other smaller families of Hemiptera are semi-aquatic. They descend beneath the waters and remain there for a considerable period of time, but they are air breathers.

# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

## NAIADS

In mythology, a naiad was one of the nymphs believed to live in, and give life and perpetuation to lakes, rivers, springs and fountains. In entomology, the term naiad is applied to the nymph with aquatic habits.

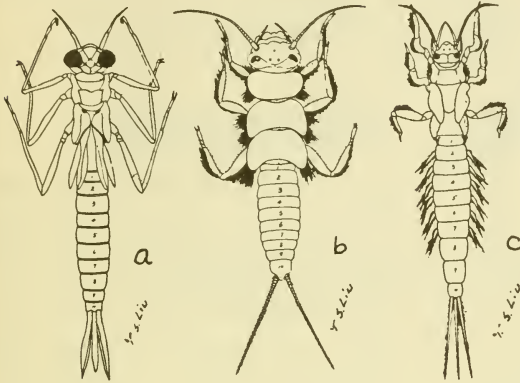


Fig. 20. Naiads: damsel fly (Odonata); b, stonefly (Plecoptera); c, Mayfly (Ephemeroptera).

There are altogether only three orders of insects which possess immature stages that are termed naiads. These are the Plecoptera, Ephemeroptera and Odonata. The naiads have some characters in common. All naiads are aquatic (except a few exotic species); they have closed spiracles, breathe by means of gills, and have mouth parts of the chewing type. Most of them are predacious, but the naiads of Ephemeroptera are believed to be herbaceous.

Naiads are generally quite uniform in appearance. The legs are long, the body is flattened and campodeiform and they are very active in water. The naiads of Plecoptera and the Ephemeroptera have conspicuous caudal filaments, varying from two to three in number. In the damselflies (Zygoptera), the caudal appendages are modified into leaf-like form and known as *tracheal gills*. Tracheal gills are located on various parts of the body. In Plecoptera, they are usually located on the underside of the thorax, although some species have gills on the head or on the abdomen. In Ephemeroptera, the gills are located on the abdomen. In the dragonflies, the rectum is modified to form a tracheal gill chamber. In the damselflies, there are three plate-like gills at the posterior end of the abdomen.

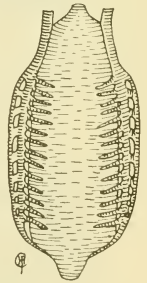


Fig. 21. Rectal tracheae of dragonfly.

## LARVAE

The term larva is derived from the Latin word for mask, having reference to the ancient belief that the adult form was masked or obscured in the larva. In entomology, the larva applies to the immature stage between the egg and the pupal stages of the insects with complete metamorphosis. There are several characters in common. A larva has no trace of wings and compound eyes are never present. The

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

shape and the appendages ordinarily are very different from those of the adult; while the body is often soft, thin skinned, or weakly sclerotized.

### TYPES OF LARVAE

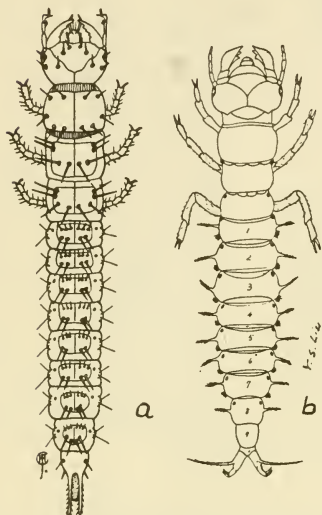


Fig. 22. Larvae: a, ground beetle, *Pterostichus* sp.; b, Dobsonfly, *Corydalus cornutus* (L.)

1. Campodeiform (Fig. 22).—The characteristics of a campodeiform larva are flattened body and long legs with cerci or caudal filaments usually present. The larvae of most of the Neuroptera, the Trichoptera, many of the Coleoptera, Dytiscidae, Carabidae, Staphylinidae, and the naiads of Plecoptera, Ephemeroptera and Odonata are campodeiform.

2. Carabiform (Fig. 23).—This is a modified form of the campodeiform in which the body is flattened but the legs are shorter. Generally there are no caudal filaments. The majority of the Chrysomelid beetles and many other Coleoptera (Lampyridae, Carabidae, Melyridae) exhibit this type.

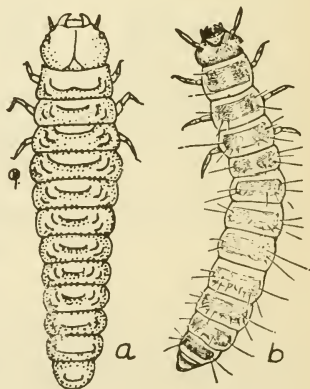


Fig. 23. a, Caraboid instar of meloid larva; b, saw-toothed grain beetle, *Oryzaephilus surinamensis* (L.)

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3. Eruciform (Fig. 24).—This type of larva is cylindrical, the thoracic legs and prolegs are present and the head is well formed. It is well illustrated in the Lepidoptera, Tenthredinidae and Mecoptera.

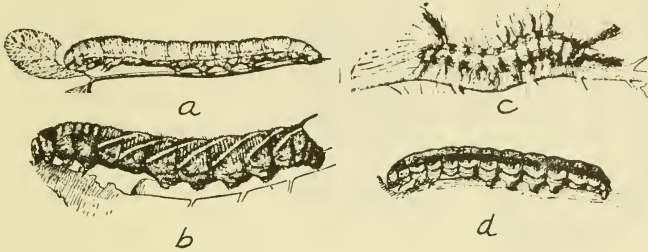


Fig. 24. Larvae: a, alfalfa caterpillar, *Eurymus eurytheme* (Boisduval); b, tomato hornworm, *Protoparce sexta* (Johnssen); c, tussock moth, *Hemerocampa vetusta* Boisduval; d, tomato fruitworm or corn earworm, *Heliothis obsoleta* Fabricius. (U.S.D.A.)

4. Scarabaeiform (Fig. 25).—The scarabaeiform larva is cylindrical and curved in U-shape with a well developed head and usually with thoracic legs but without prolegs. There are a pair of spiracles on the prothorax and eight pairs of abdominal spiracles. This type of larva is typical of the Scarabaeidae. It is also represented by the Bruchidae, Ptinidae, Anobiidae, and other Coleoptera.

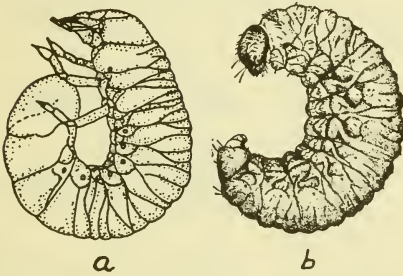


Fig. 25. Larvae: a, *Anomala kansana* Hayes & McCulloch; b, clover leaf weevil, *Hypera punctata* (Fab.)

5. Elateriform (Fig. 26).—These larvae are cylindrical in shape with a thick tough body wall. The setae are much reduced, the legs are usually present but short. They resemble both the vermiform and carabiform larvae. This type is well represented by the Elateridae, Tenebrionidae, Alleculidae, Ptilodactylidae and Euryptogonidae.



Fig. 26. False wireworm, *Eleodes letcheri* vandykei Blaidell.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

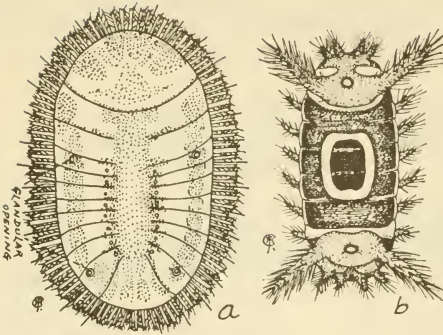


Fig. 27. a, *Molamba lonata* Lec.; (Redrawn from Boving and Craighead) b, Saddle-back slug caterpillar, *Sabine stimulea* Clemens.

6. **Platyform** (Fig. 27).—This type is short, broad and extremely flat. The legs are short, inconspicuous or absent. They are found in the genera *Microdon* and *Xanthogramma* of syrphid larvae, the larvae of some slug caterpillars and those of the water pennies, *Psephenus*, hister beetles, etc.

7. **Vermiform** (Fig. 28).—The larvae of this type are more or less wormlike. This designation is indefinite but is usually considered to include larvae that are cylindrical in shape, elongate and without locomotive appendages. Most of the larvae of Diptera are like that. This is also true of the larvae of woodboring beetles, some sawflies and the flea beetles of the genera *Systema* and *Epiritrix*. The larvae of fleas and many parasitic Hymenoptera also belong to this type.

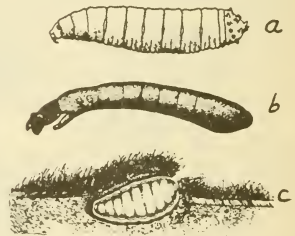


Fig. 28. Larvae: a, cabbage root maggot, *Hylemyia brassicae* (Bouche); b, buffalognat, *Simulium pecuarum* Riley; c, common cattle grub, *Hypoderma lineatum* (De Villiers) under host skin. (U.S.D.A.)

8. **Hypermetamorphosis** (Fig. 29). — This is a kind of complex metamorphosis in which there are several types of larvae, including: a minute active first instar, a more or less robust and sluggish second instar, and a similar but legless third instar. It is represented in the Neuroptera (Mantispidae), Coleoptera (Meloidae, Carabidae, Staphylinidae, Rhipiphoridae), Strepsiptera, parasitic Diptera (Acroceridae, Bombyliidae, Nemestrinidae, Tachinidae), and Hymenoptera (Ichneumonidae, Pteromalidae, Perilampidae). The larvae of this type often have special names. The first instar of Meloidae, Strepsiptera and Mantispidae are called *triungulins*. They receive this name because the legs have three claws. The fifth instar of Meloidae



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

is called a *coarctate larva* or a *pseudopupa*. The first instar of *Platygaster*, a parasite of the Hessian Fly, resembles a crustacean

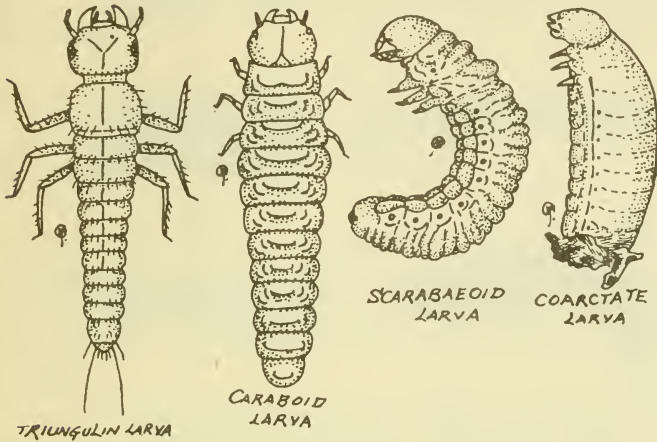


Fig. 29. Life stages of *Epicauta vittata* Fabricius.

and is called a *naupliiform larva*. The first instar of *Perilampus*, a secondary parasite of the fall webworm, is called a *planidium*, meaning a diminutive wanderer.

### COMMON NAMES OF LARVAE

The importance of common names has been emphasized by many entomologists in recent years. We wish we could have common names for all the more important insects. Only a few orders now have common names. The larvae of *Lepidoptera* are known as *caterpillars*. The term *grubs* is applied to the larvae of *Coleoptera*. *Maggots* indicate the larvae of *Diptera*, *Cyclophorhapha* and *Caddisworms* the larvae of *Trichoptera*. A number of common names have been applied to the larvae of certain families: the *Geometridae* are called *inchworms* or *measuring worms*; the *Limacodidae* are known as *slug caterpillars*; the *Psychidae* are called *bagworms*; the *Chrysopidae* are named *aphid-ions*; the *Myrmeleonidae* are known as *ant-lions*. The *Elateridae* are called *wireworms* and the *Sphingidae* are known as *hornworms*.

Some common names are derived from the larval habits, such as

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

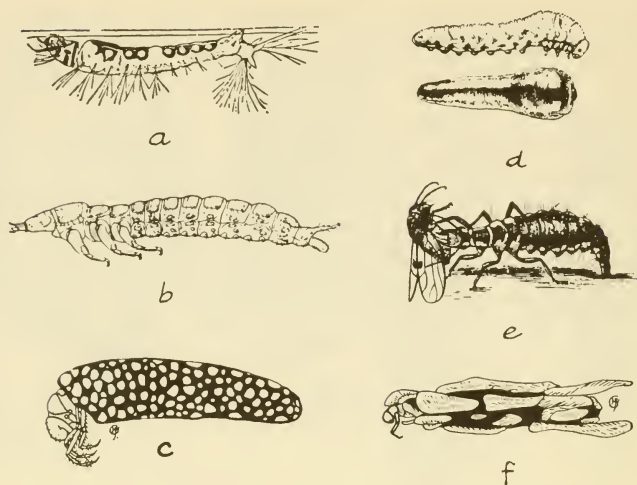


Fig. 30. Larvae: a, *Anopheles* sp.; b, ground beetle; c, *Platyphylax* sp.; d, sawfly larvae; e, aphid lion; f, *Stenophylax* sp. (In part from U.S.D.A.)

leaf rollers, leaf miners, casebearers, webworms, tent caterpillars, leaf skeletonizers, cutworms, armyworms, borers, leaf tiers, loopers,

leaf folders, gall makers, etc. Names of the hosts are usually used in indicating the insects of that particular host, for example, corn borer, tobacco hornworm, etc. The part of the host which the insects attack is also used in the common names of the larvae, such as the elder shoot borer, pink bollworm, tomato fruitworm, etc. Common names, unless standardized, are often confusing.

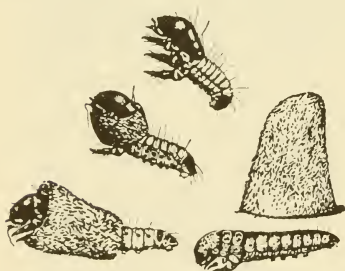


Fig. 31. The formation of the bag in early stages of *Thyridopteryx ephemeraeformis* Hayworth. (U.S.D.A.)

The common names of insects with economic importance have been standardized by the American Association of Economic Entomologists which include a number of names for the specific larvae.

### PUPAE

The term pupa, derived from the Latin word meaning baby or child, was proposed by Linnæus on account of its resemblance to a papoose or baby bound in garments. The term was first used in connection with the *chrysalis* of *Lepidoptera*. The pupa is defined as the resting stage or inactive period of all insects with complete metamor-

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

phosis, the intermediate stage between the larva and the adult. Another term *prepupa* refers to the last larval instar of some insects which retain the larval form and mobility but cease to feed. This condition exists in many orders of insects, notably the Diptera, Hymenoptera and Coleoptera.

**TYPES OF PUPAE.** — The pupae of insects can be classified with reference to the degrees of freedom of the appendages.

1. **Obtect** (Fig. 32). — If the appendages are closely appressed to the body, it is said to be an obtect pupa. This is a common type in the Lepidoptera, in many of the Coleoptera, and in more primitive Diptera.

Pupae of this type are covered with a tight-fitting, more or less transparent skin which holds all the parts except the end of the abdomen practically immovable. *Chrysalis* is a term often applied to the pupae of the Lepidoptera, especially of the butterflies, and by some would be restricted to those pupae bearing markings of silver or gold.



Fig. 32. pupae: a, leaf roller, *Coccia rosaceana* (Harris); b, tobacco hornworm, *Protoperce quinque-maculata* Haworth.

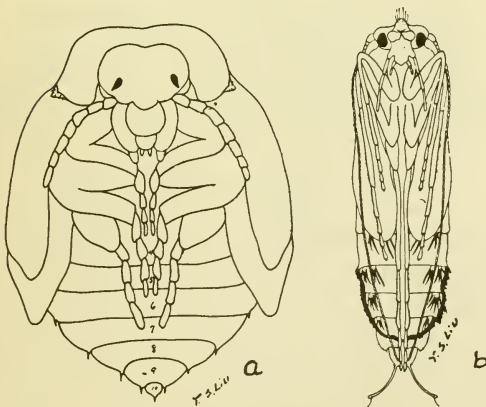


Fig. 33. Pupae: a, Colorado potato beetle, *Leptinotarsa decemlineata* (Say); b, *Hesperophylax* sp.

2. **Exarate** (Fig. 33). — When the appendages are not closely appressed to the body but are free, it is said to be an exarate pupa. The Neuroptera, Trichoptera, most of the Coleoptera and a few of the Lepidoptera (*Tischeriidae*) have exarate pupae.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3. Coarctate (Fig. 34). — The appendages are not visible at all and are obscured by the larval skin before the last moult, in the coarctate pupa. This type is found in the more specialized Diptera (Cyclorrhapha) and in certain Coccidae and Stylopidae.

The length of time in which an insect remains in its pupal state is highly variable. Much goes on within the pupal case before the adult is ready to emerge but the whole process moves so rapidly with some species that the insect remains as a pupa for only a few days. Many insects pass the winter or other unfavorable time in the pupa stage. When their growth is completed many larvae travel for a day or two thus scattering the species and lessening the chances for total loss of a brood. These larvae usually select some protected spot before settling down.



Fig. 34. Cabbage root maggot, *Hy-  
lemya brassicae*  
(Bouche).

PROTECTION OF PUPAE. — Most pupae are concealed in one way or another from their enemies, and also from such adverse influences as excess of moisture, sudden marked variations of temperature, shock and other mechanical disturbance. Provision against such influences is usually made by the larva in its last instar. Many lepidopterous and coleopterous larvae burrow beneath the ground and there construct earthen cells in which to pupate. The larger number of insects, however, construct cocoons which are special envelopes formed either of silk or of extraneous material bound together by means of threads of that substance. Thus many wood-boring larvae utilize chips. Larvae which transform in the ground select particles of earth. Many Arctiid larvae use their body-hairs and Trichoptera use pebbles, veg-

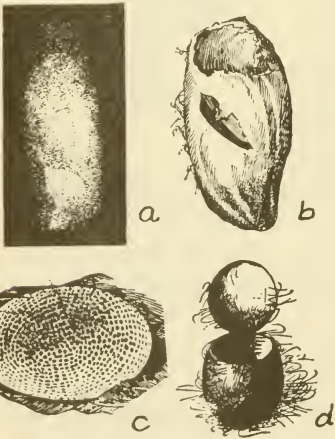


Fig. 35. Cocoons: a, braconid cocoon; b, empty braconid cocoon; c, cocoon of the clover-leaf weevil; d, cocoon of the aphid lion. (U.S.D.A.)

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS



Fig. 36. Cases of the bagworm, *Thyridopteryx ephemeraefomis* H. A. worth.

etable fragments, etc., these larval cases functioning as cocoons. In these instances the substances are held together by means of a warp of silk and worked up to form cocoons. A large number of other insects, including some of the Neuroptera and Trichoptera, many Lepidoptera and Hymenoptera and the Siphonaptera, utilize silk alone in making their cocoons. Among the Tenthredinidae, cocoons of a parchment-like or shell-like consistency are frequent: in some cases the outer cocoon encloses an inner one of more delicate texture which may be called a *double cocoon*. The naked pupae of butterflies are suspended by silk on the cremaster at the caudal end of the abdomen. In the Diptera (Cyclorrhapha), instead of spinning a silken cocoon or constructing a case of extraneous material, the larva practices an interesting economy by retaining about itself one of its own cast, dry skins to form a case called a *puparium*. This next-to-the-last larval skin is not discarded at the time of pupation but is retained until the adult breaks out of the pupal skin.



Fig. 37. A butterfly pupa.

## WHERE TO COLLECT IMMATURE INSECTS

Insects are so highly diversified in their food and ways of living that one may find at least a few insects almost any where he looks. When we consider their habits the insects fall into groups which may be rather definitely located.

### A. CHARACTERIZED HABITATS:

1. Aquatic Insects. — Those insects that dwell in water or are more or less closely related with water are said to be aquatic. About five per cent of all the insects are aquatic and still another three per cent are closely related with water. In a strict sense, the truly aquatic insects are those which employ gills to separate the oxygen from the water in which they live. Other insects obtain their oxygen from the air but because they are closely related with water are said to be semiaquatic insects. If we take a count of the insect orders, almost half of them have aquatic or semiaquatic species. The Ephemeroptera, Odonata, Plecoptera and Trichoptera, with rare exceptions, are strictly aquatic.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

The Neuroptera, Hemiptera, Diptera, Lepidoptera, Coleoptera and Hymenoptera are only partly aquatic. Some Collembola live on the surface of water.

2. Phytophagous Insects. — Most insects feed on plants. We can find them on or in the plants. Others in like manner feed in dead woods or decaying plant materials. All these are said to be phytophagous.

3. Parasitic Insects. — Those insects that secure their food by living within other animals are known as *endoparasites*. *Ectoparasites* live and feed on other animals from the outside as with lice. Many insects live within dead or decaying animal and plant materials and are said to be *saprophagous*.

4. Subterranean Insects. — These insects exist beneath the surface of the soil. Most of the orders contain some species with subterranean habits. Remarkable examples are ants, termites, social wasps and bees which live together of their own. Numerous insects lay their eggs in the soil, such as the grasshoppers, earwigs, beetles, flies, etc. Among the Coleoptera, the Cicindelidae, Carabidae, Scarabaeidae, Meloidae and Elateridae are outstanding examples. With the Diptera, the Tipulidae, Bibionidae, Dolichopodidae, Rhagionidae, Empididae, Asilidae, Bombyliidae and Anthomyiidae commonly hide the eggs within the ground. Lepidopterous larvae and pupae frequently hibernated in the soil. Comparatively few nymphs dwell in the soil except certain root-feeding Aphididae and Coccidae and the immature mole crickets. The cicada nymphs on the other hand spend a long time underground.

### B. SOME CHARACTERISTIC MARKINGS:

1. Damaged Plants. — Defoliated plants, skeletonized or partial eaten leaves, holes bored in plant stems or in fruits, etc., are good indications for locating the insects which did this damage.

2. Associated Animals. — When a collector sees busily working ants, he can find aphid colonies near by. From the noise of bees or flies, we can often find their nests or their larval breeding places. On the host animals, we can usually find predators and parasites.

3. Sweet Secretions. — A number of insect families, such as the Chiridae, Aphididae and Coccidae give off a molasses-like sweet secretion known as "Honey dew". This is easily observed and helps to locate the insects producing it.

4. Insect Feces. — Many caterpillars for instance eat such large quantities of coarse foods and discharge such large amounts of waste material from the digestive tract as to give a clue to their presence. Furthermore, from the characteristic shape of the feces, certain species can be identified.

5. Abnormality of Plants. — Not only the abnormal growth of plants but also the malnutrition of plants can lead us to find the insects re-



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

sponsible for these stunted conditions. The gall-insects and leaf miners are readily located within the galls and the mined leaves. Many other insects can be found on malnutritive plants even though the insect pests are feeding underground.

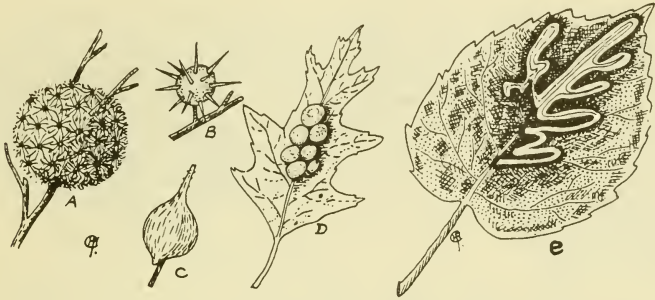


Fig. 38. a, Wool sower gall, *Andricus seminator* Harr.; b, Spring rose gall, *Rhodites bicolor* Harr.; c, goldenrod ball gall, *Eurosta solidaginis* Fitch; d, *Dryophanta* galls, *Dryophanta lanata* Gill; e mine of *Phyllocnistis populiella* Cham.

## HOW TO COLLECT IMMATURE INSECTS

1. Sweeping. — There are usually numerous nymphs and larvae that live or hide in grass, weeds, shrubs and trees. Sweep the net back and forth on those plants in order to get those insects into the net. This method of collecting can usually give large returns. The contents of the net should be examined often and the specimens removed before they are damaged by this vigorous treatment.

2. Trapping. — Many insects are attracted to food, certain chemicals, or places of shelter. We can use cans or bottles sunk into the ground and baited with molasses, fruits or meat. Not only the nymphs or larvae can be trapped in this way, but the eggs may also be laid by the adults.

3. Digging. — Many subterranean insects can be collected by digging in the earth. You will be surprised at the large numbers of insects a square foot of soil may contain.

4. Hand Picking. — This is the simplest method to collect insects. As a matter of fact, we use it frequently. When we see the insects we can simply pick them up in our hands. However, some insects have nettled hairs or strong mouth parts which may hurt the hands, therefore, it is advisable to use a pair of tweezers or forceps on some species.

5. Netting in Water. — For the aquatic insects, a water net can be used for scraping the bottom or passing through vegetation in water. Occasionally the aerial net is used in water, but it is quite poor economy.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

6. Sifting. — Rinse the aquatic plants or bottom mud in a sifter. Many insects can be collected on the screens of the sifter (See Fig. 41). Subterranean insects may be easily secured by running the ground litter or soil through a sifter.

7. Separating. — Field soils, debris and animal nests or discharges can be put in a separator with a light on the top for heating. Some separators employ a stream of water to remove the insects from the debris. A good number of unusual insects may be collected in the receptacle. Those insects are usually small and active, or they feign death when disturbed, and can not be collected readily by ordinary methods. If heat is being used as in the Berlese trap, great care should be taken that the material does not catch fire. Your specimens may not only be damaged in this way but you could also have no place to work the next morning.

## COLLECTING APPARATUS

1. Sweeping Net. — The sweeping net needs to be strong enough to stand rough beating and sweeping. For the bag, 6-ounce drill, heavy

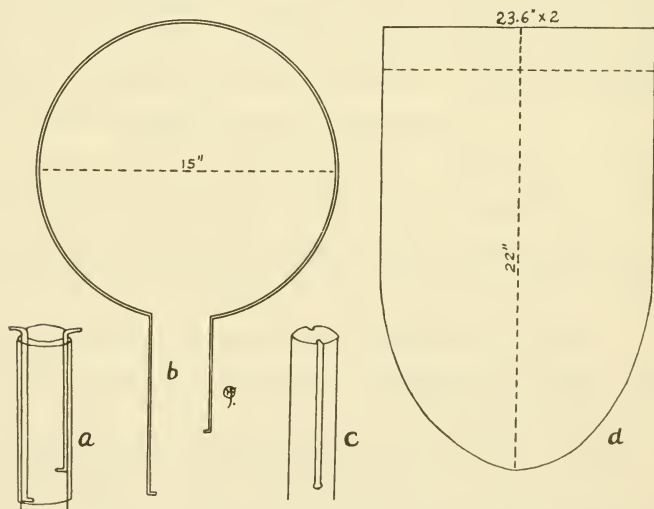


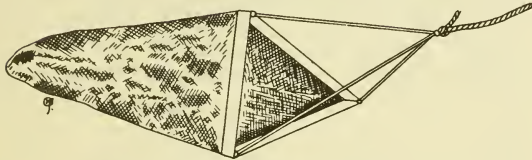
Fig. 39. Sweeping net: a, net handle with metal cylinder to hold the ring in place; b, ring; c, net handle with grooves; d, bag.

muslin or light canvas is usually recommended. The handle with a length of three to four feet and a diameter about an inch is desirable.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

Many prefer a shorter handle; a few strokes of a saw will take care of that.

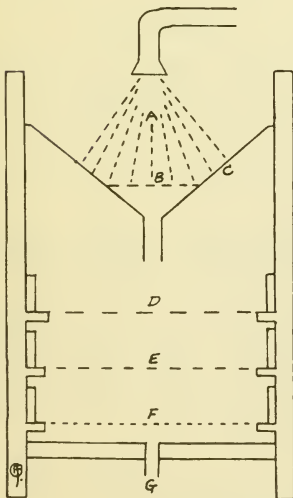
2. Water Net. — The triangular dredge has some advantages over



other types because no matter which side rests on the bottom one of the blades will cut into the ground when the instrument is dragged.

Fig. 40. A triangular dredge.

This dredge has a net of fairly close mesh, sturdy fabric. It may be drawn behind a boat or the net may be rolled into a compact body and thrown out to some distance from the shore then drawn back by its long cord. In the absence of a dredge net, a garden rake can be used to good advantage. The debris at the bottom of the water course is dragged out on the bank and examined for the insects that are hiding within it. As the water runs out of the debris the insects try to get back to the body of water also.



3. Sifter. — Any container with a wire-mesh bottom will serve this purpose. The size of the meshes in the screen depends upon the size of the insects, but for general purposes eight meshes to the inch will be found useful. Figure 41 shows a sifting box which is good for collecting soil insects.

Several sieves with different sized meshes will help separate the insect catch. The process should not be rushed, but the water turned on gently or many of the specimens will be damaged.

Fig. 41. Sifter: A, water; B, screen; C, funnel; D-F, screens, from coarse to fine; G, water exit.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

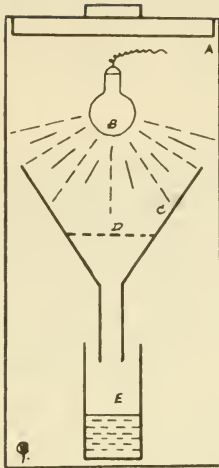


Fig. 42. Separator:  
A, container; B, light;  
C, funnel; D, screen;  
E, preservative.

4. Separator. — This is also known as the Berlese funnel. It consists of a funnel over which a sieve is placed. The funnel leads into a receptacle which contains liquid preservative. Over the top of the funnel a light bulb is placed by which the heat and light drive the insects down until they fall into the receptacle. A rack or special container is often employed to support the funnel. Where a constant source of hot water or steam is available the funnel may be surrounded by a water jacket or coils of hollow tubing which greatly reduces the fire hazard.

5. Aspirator. — This is also known as a suction bottle. It is conven-

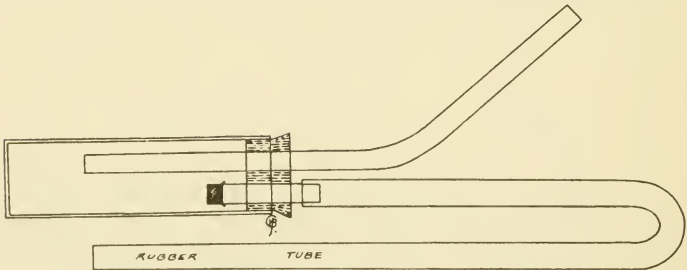


Fig. 43. Aspirator.

ient to collect small insects either from the sweeping net or from under stones, bark, etc. Its construction is illustrated in the figure 43.

6. Other Apparatus. — Different sizes of bottles and vials are needed for storing insect specimens. Tweezers, forceps, pocket knife, small shovel or spade, note book, labels, etc., are all important in collecting insects. It is preferable to have a collecting bag to store those tools for fieldwork.

## HOW TO PRESERVE SPECIMENS

For facilitating permanent study and handling, the insects must be killed and carefully preserved to make good specimens. It is impor-

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

tant that the specimens be kept in as good condition as possible. The insect body should retain its correct shape and the colors should likewise be kept as true to life as possible. No one method is entirely satisfactory to cover all these aspects.

Immature insects are not ordinarily mounted on pins, but 70% to 80% alcohol or other special liquid preservatives are used. Occasionally the small-bodied specimens need to be mounted on slides for microscopic study. Before the insect is placed in the preservative it should be killed by putting it into boiling water for one to five minutes. The length of time in boiling water depends entirely upon the size of the specimen. It will be sufficient when the specimen become swollen up. This method of fixing is found even better than by injecting the preservative into the insect body.

For exhibition purposes, the larvae are often inflated and kept in dry condition. However, that is not desirable for scientific study, for during the process of inflation, many cuticular appendages could be damaged and the body color is sometimes changed. Inflating larvae is rather simple; place the larva on a clean blotter or a piece of paper and press the body contents out by gently rolling a round pencil from just back of the head to the end of the abdomen. Insert the drawn end of the glass tubing into the anal opening of the larva and secure it in place with the clips. Blow gently into the glass tubing so that the larva is distended to its normal size but not

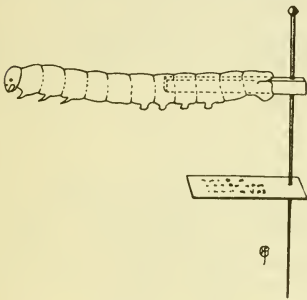


Fig. 44. An inflated and mounted larva.

distorted, and warm it gently in an oven until dry. A lamp can be used for heating and a chimney or a tin can can be used as an oven. For blowing air into the body, it is better to use a hand bellows. An expansion bulb is desirable to give an even flow of air. When the specimen is thoroughly dry, remove it from the glass tubing and mount it on a kitchen match by inserting the match stem into the anal opening and then mount the match stem on a pin (see Fig. 44). If the specimen is too loose on the match stem, glue may be added.

Specimens must always be accompanied by labels in which brief information of date, locality and collector are recorded. For the liquid preserved specimens, the label should be written with India ink or black pencil and the label put in the preservative with the specimen. For the pinned specimens, the label should be pinned below the specimen.

Peterson recommends the following preservatives:

1. X.A. mixture:

- Xylene ..... 1 part.
- 95% ethyl alcohol ..... 1 part.

Good for caterpillars, coleopterous larvae and Tenthredinid larvae.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

### 2. X.A.A.D. mixture:

Xylene .....	4 parts.
Commercial refined isopropyl alcohol .....	6 parts.
Glacial acetic acid .....	5 parts.
Dioxan .....	4 parts.

Good for lepidopterous larvae and coleopterous larvae.

### 3. K.A.A.D. mixture:

Kerosene .....	1 part.
95% ethyl alcohol or refined commercial isopropyl alcohol .....	7-9 parts.
Glacial acetic acid .....	1 part.
Dioxan .....	1 part.

Good for maggots, lepidopterous larvae, hymenopterous larvae and pupae, coleopterous larvae and neuropterous larvae. But it does not produce satisfactory specimens where larvae possess a thick exoskeleton, namely wireworms and similar species or among some aquatic insects especially immature stages of Zygoptera and Ephemeroptera.

Larvae collected in the field are dropped into the killing solution and kept submerged until they are completely distended. If narrow vials are used for large larvae they should be placed in a horizontal position until the larvae straighten out and become firmly set. This may take from one to several hours depending upon the species. At the end of this period the larvae should be transferred to ethyl alcohol. Larvae possessing a firm exoskeleton may be preserved in 75% ethyl alcohol, while soft bodied forms killed in K.A.A.D. mixture should be preserved in 95% ethyl alcohol to prevent any collapse.

## HOW TO REAR IMMATURE INSECTS

For studying the life history or identifying the adult stage, the immature insects are often reared in the laboratory. Rearing insects is quite a technical job. The natural conditions under which the immature insects were found should be simulated as closely as possible. The following is just a brief account of the more important aspects.

1. Cage. — Screen cages of different sizes are desirable for rearing immature insects. The food plant can be cultured in soil or in water and put in the cage. For rearing a large number of isolated individual insects it is usually difficult to provide a large number of cages and bottles or vials are used instead.

2. Food. — The kind of food material the insect feeds on must be determined at the start. Ordinarily the rearing container is not large enough for putting the entire food material inside, so fresh food should be supplied every day. For example, leaves or the other parts of plants should be provided for the phytophagous insects and they always should be kept fresh. Insects that infest seeds and those that

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

cause plant galls may be reared by enclosing the seeds or galls in a tight container. Parasitic wasps may be reared from their hosts by keeping the host until the adult parasites emerge. Boring insects can be left in the original food material and kept in a cage until they emerge.

3. Humidity. — Humidity plays an important part in rearing insects. If the condition inside of the container is too dry the food material becomes unsuitable for the insects. On the other hand, if the humidity is too high, moisture will be deposited on the sides of the container and frequently the death of the insect will result. To adjust the humidity of a vial or a bottle, changing of the materials of the stopper is sometimes found practicable. A cork stopper can keep the humidity much higher than a stopper of cotton. Insects that feed on decaying animal matter should have the cage provided with slightly moist soil or sand.

4. Pupation. — Insects that are being reared often die during the pupal stage. This requires a careful study of the pupation habits. Some insects make silk or soil cocoons and some just pupate in the soil without forming any covering. Soil must be added to the cage to meet the needs of the insect, otherwise a successful rearing will not be obtained. The cocoon should not be removed artificially from its enclosed pupa for it is necessary to protect the insect. The over-wintering pupae should be kept in good condition. Cold can kill the pupae and too high temperatures may cause the pupae to emerge too early.

5. Preserve the different stages. — For life history study, not only the different stages and different instars need to be preserved, but also the cast larval skins, pupal cases and cocoons which are very important in scientific study. These should all be carefully labeled.

6. Recording. — Every change of the insect, both morphological and physiological, should be recorded at once. The student may devise his own form of records but should keep them uniform and with all the necessary details. Careless observations and records are worse than none at all; the latter can not be misinterpreted.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

The following form is recommended for recording the life history:

MONTH.....	YEAR <u>1947</u>	INSECT.....
LOCALITY <u>7th Pleasant St.</u>	No. <u>103</u>	FOOD <u>Soybean leaf</u>

Date	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
1	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E																						
2																															
3	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H																						
4																															
5																															
6																															
7	M	M		M	M		M	M																							
8				M			M			M																					
9																															
10																															
11	M <sub>1</sub>				M <sub>2</sub>																										
12		M <sub>1</sub>	M <sub>2</sub>					M <sub>1</sub>																							
13							M <sub>1</sub>		M <sub>2</sub>	M <sub>3</sub>																					
14																															
15																															
16	P																														
17																															
18		P		P																											
19			P		P			P		P																					
20											P																				
21																															
22																															
23	A																														
24																															
25																															
26			A		A																										
27																															
28						A	A		A																						
29				D				A																							
30	D									A																					
31																															

RECORDED BY John Smith

Fig. 45. Life history recording form.

For recording the following abbreviations can be used:

E for egg; L for larva; N for nymph; A for adult; H for hatch; M for molt; P for pupa; D for died.

## PICTURED-KEY TO ORDERS OF IMMATURE INSECTS\*

1a. Mouth parts of chewing type, often retracted within head; 3 pairs of legs present; tarsi frequently single-segmented and usually with 2 claws; wing pads never present; sides of thoracic segments and sterna not divided into small sclerites; abdomen may possess cerci, forceps or furcula and collophore.

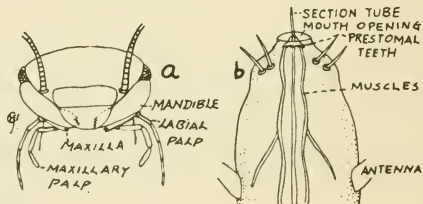


Fig. 46. a, Mouth parts of the firebrat, *Thermobia domestica* (Packard); b, Mouth parts of the long-nosed cattle louse, *Linognathus vituli* (L.)

\* The orders and families of insects follow the same terminology in this book as that used in the revised edition of "How to Know the Insects" (1947). For a phylogenetic list of these orders and families see "How to Know the Insects" pages 171-193.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

1b. If mouth parts of chewing, rasping, or piercing and sucking types, they are not retracted within head; if retracted the mouth parts are usually hook-like (legless maggots) or of usual sucking type (Anoplura, etc.); legs ordinarily present, tarsi composed of 1 to 5 segments, when one-segmented, possessing only one claw; wing

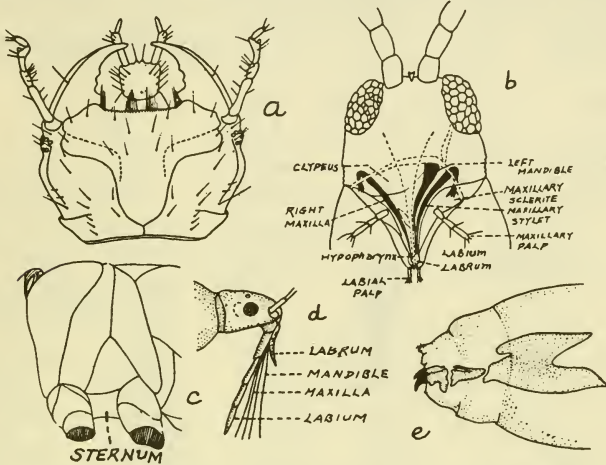
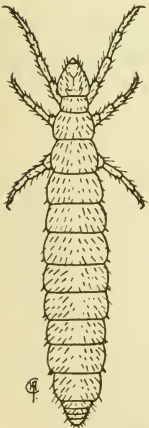


Fig. 47. a, Head of *Harpalus vagans* LeConte with chewing mouth parts; b, Head of a thrips with piercing and rasping mouth parts; c, Lateral aspect of the thorax of a damselfly; d, Piercing and sucking mouth parts; e, Head of a maggot and mouth hooks.

pads present in some orders, when present the sides of the thoracic segments and sterna are usually divided into smaller sclerites; all appendages absent among some larvae and puparia.

Fig. 47. .... 4



2a. Antennae absent. Fig. 48. ....

Order PROTURA page 54

The members of this order are very minute, slender, whitish, wingless insects with retracted mouth parts, no eyes but with a pair of pseudoculi, pointed head, nine-segmented abdomen in young and twelve-segmented abdomen in adult. Less than a hundred species have been described.

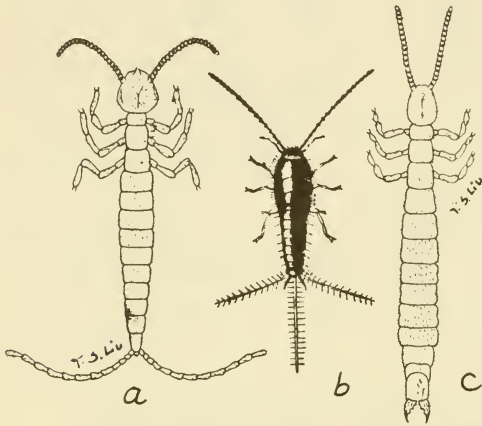
Fig. 48. *Microentomon perposillum*.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

2b. Antennae present. . . . . 3

3a. Antennae consisting of 10 or more segments; cerci usually multi-articulate, long and filiform, or specialized into forceplike structures; abdomen usually 11-segmented, without a furcula or collophore; mesothorax never overlapping and concealing the prothorax.

Fig. 49. . . . . Order THYSANURA page 55



They are known as bristletails, silverfish and slickers. About 400 species have been described. They are found in the soil, in rotting wood, under stones, or in leaf-deposits of forest floors, and also live in the nests of ants and termites.

Fig. 49. a, *Campodea fragilis* Meinert; b, *Leptisma* sp.; c, *Japyx minemus*.

3b. Antennae consisting of not more than 8 segments; cerci never present nor specialized into forcep-like structures; abdomen 6-segmented, if segments are visible; generally possesses a furcula and a collophore may be present; mesothorax may overlap and conceal the small prothorax. Fig. 50. . . . . Order COLLEMBOLA page 58

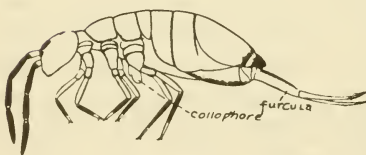


Fig. 50. *Entomobrya comparata*.

Springtails are small insects rarely exceeding 5 mm. in length, and occur in almost all situations. They are found in the soil, in decaying vegetable matter, among herbage, under bark of trees, etc. A few species live in the nests of ants and termites, other occur on the surface of fresh water and several are littoral or marine. In habits they are saprophagous or phytophagous. About 1,500 species have been described.



# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

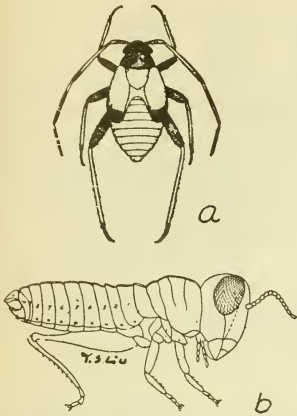


Fig. 51. a, *Adelphocoris rapidus* (Say); b, *Melanoplus differentialis* (Thomas).

4a. Tarsi usually consisting of 2, 3, or 4 segments, rarely of 5, and very rarely of a single segment. Legs very rarely wanting. Thorax with all 3 segments exposed and generally different in form; pleural and sternal sclerites usually distinct and never concealed; wing pads usually present; epicranial suture does not extend to the clypeus; external genitalia may be evident in later instars.

Fig. 51. . . . . NYPHHS . . . . . 5

4b. Tarsi usually consisting of a single segment, or legs wanting, or segmentation of tarsi difficult to determine; more rarely tarsi of 2, 3, or 4 segments; thorax with all three segments similar in form and wing pads wanting; or, wing pads present, laterally and ventrally, the thoracic segments not exposed; the pleural and sternal sclerites never distinct, either not differentiated from notum or concealed by legs and wing pads; epicranial suture usually extends to clypeus; external genitalia not evident..

Fig. 52. . . LARVAE and PUPAE . . 17

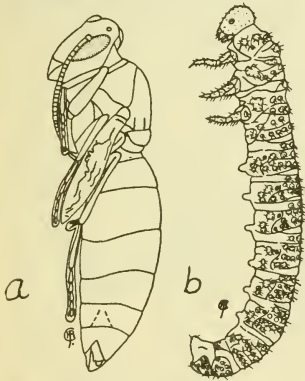


Fig. 52. a, Pupa: *Vespa maculata* Kirby; b, Larva: *Pteronidea ribesii* (Scopoli).

## NYPHHS

5a. Mouth parts adapted for piercing and sucking, or for piercing and rasping.

Fig. 53. . . . . 14

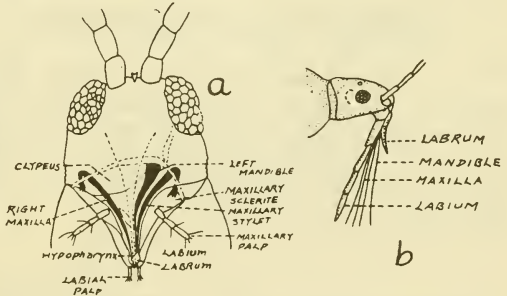


Fig. 53. Mouth parts: a, piercing and rasping; b, piercing and sucking.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

5b. Mouth parts adapted for chewing. Fig. 54. . . . .6

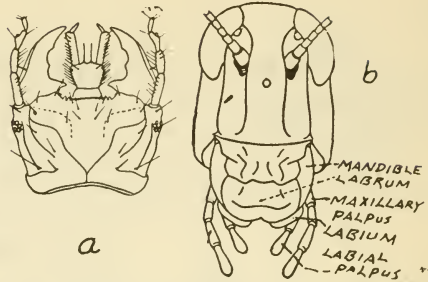


Fig. 54. Chewing mouth parts: a, carabid larva; b, grasshopper.

6a. Labium when extended, usually 4 or more times as long as broad, scoop-like in structure and when folded serves as a mask that covers the other mouth parts; plate-like gills may occur at caudal end of abdomen; aquatic life. Fig. 55. Order ODONATA page 67

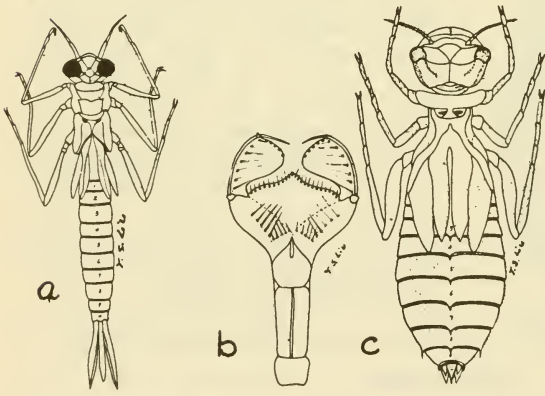


Fig. 55. a, *Agrion* sp.; b, labium of *Libellula luctuosa* Burmeister; c, *Libellula luctuosa* Burmeister.

The damselflies and dragonflies are the members of this order which includes about 5,000 described species. The naiads are extensively aquatic, living in various situations in fresh water. Many live hidden in sand or mud, etc. Without exception all the naiads are predacious, feeding upon various forms of aquatic life. The

principal external changes involved during metamorphosis include an increase in the size of the compound eyes, and during the last few instars, ocelli become evident; the antennal segments increase in number, and the wing-rudiments undergo certain changes with the result that the developing hind wings overlap the anterior pair; the caudal gills change in the Zygoptera.

6b. Labium of normal type, not modified into a scoop nor hinged. . . . .7

- 7a. Tracheal gills (plate, feather, tassel or finger-like) usually occur on abdomen or thorax (none in some small Plecoptera); 2 or 3, long, many segmented tails present at caudal end of abdomen; aquatic life. Fig. 56. ....8
- 7b. Abdomen or thorax without tracheal gills and without long segmented tail-like filaments at caudal end; short cerci may exist. ....9

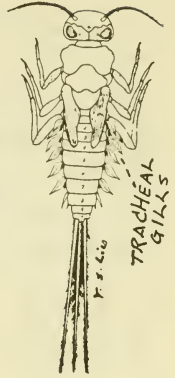


Fig. 56. A Mayfly naiad showing the tracheal gills.

The presence of gills as well as their type is more easily determined if the specimen is floated in water or preservative. They are often so fine and may lie so close to the insect as to not be readily apparent in dry specimens. The function of the gills, of course, is to extract oxygen from the water. The gills are extensions of the tracheal tubes.

- 8a. Tracheal gills (plate, feather, or tail-like) located on lateral margins of abdominal tergites only; 3 tails (in some family only 2), fringed with rather long setae, occur at caudal end; tarsi possess 1 claw. Fig. 57. ....Order EPHEMEROPTERA page 62

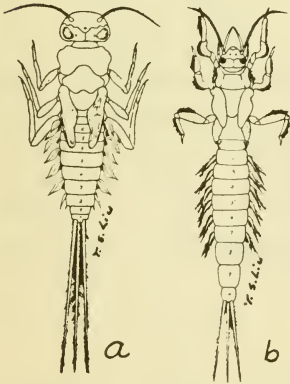


Fig. 57. a, *Heptogenia* sp.; b, *Hexagenia bilineata* Say.

About 1,500 species of Mayflies are described. Their naiads are aquatic and long lived, in some cases, this period is believed to occupy three years. Between the naiad and the imago, there is a subimago stage which differs from the mature imago in its duller appearance and its somewhat translucent wings which are usually margined by prominent fringes of hairs. They are essentially herbivorous, feeding upon fragments of the plant tissues. Certain forms, however, are believed to be carnivorous.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 8b. Tracheal gills, usually finger-like bunches or single, often located on the ventral aspect of the thoracic segments; in some cases they occur on the jaw, on the proximal and the last segments of the abdomen; (may be absent in Nemouridae and Capniidae); 2 distinct tails (cerci), usually without long fringes of setae, occur at the caudal end of the abdomen; tarsi possess 2 claws.

Fig. 58. ....Order PLECOPTERA page 59

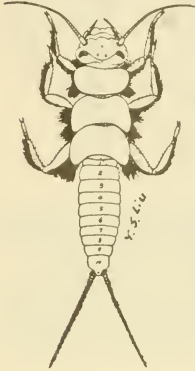


Fig. 58. *Topoperla media* (Walker).

The stoneflies constitute a small order, about 1,500 species being described. The naiads are aquatic, they live under debris in eddies or under stones in clear fresh water and feed largely upon the larvae of Mayflies and midges, but some are thought to feed upon vegetable debris. The time occupied in development appears to range from about a year to four years.

- 9a. Antennae not more than 5-segmented; body strongly depressed; head larger and broader than prothorax; ectoparasitic life.

Fig. 59. ....Order MALLOPHAGA

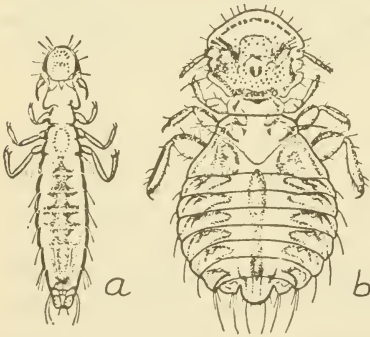


Fig. 59. a, Variable hen louse, *Lipeurus caponis* (L.) (Ohio Agr. Expt. Sta.); b, Large chicken louse, *Goniocotes gigas* (Taschenberg) (Ohio Expt. Sta.).

The biting lice or bird lice are ectoparasites of birds and mammals. About 2,800 species have been described. Their food consists of dry and nearly or quite dead cuticular substances. Eggs are glued separately to the feathers or hair. The nymphs closely resemble their adults except in size. The distribution of the biting lice is quite limited to their definite hosts.

- 9b. Antennae more than 5-segmented. .... 10

- 10a. Prothorax usually subequal to mesothorax or larger; if prothorax is much smaller than mesothorax then cerci are present, tarsi are 5-segmented and the legs are greatly elongated. .... 11



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 10b. Prothorax shorter than and smaller than mesothorax or metathorax; cerci wanting; tarsi 2 or 3-segmented; labial palp 1-segmented; resemble aphids in shape. Fig. 60. Order CORRODENTIA

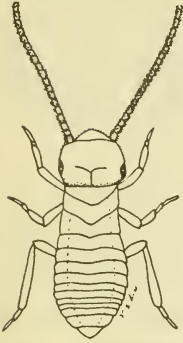


Fig. 60. *Peripsocus phacopterus*.

The psocids, booklice, or dustlice are the members of this order which includes about 1,000 described species. They feed upon the paste of book bindings, fragments of animal and decaying vegetable matter, and cereal products. They are found in houses, on tree trunks, under bark, in bird's nests, etc. Eggs are laid in small groups on bark or leaves and are protected by a meshwork of silken threads. After hatching, the changes of development are slight. Six instars are recorded in certain species.

- 11a. Long axis of head and mouth parts usually vertical; in one family (Blattidae) the mouth parts project caudal and in another family (Phasmidae) cephalo-ventrad; among the Phasmidae the prothorax is much smaller than the mesothorax or metathorax and the legs are greatly elongated; the mouth parts of all the species are of a generalized chewing type; antennae with many segments. Fig. 61.....Order ORTHOPTERA page 69

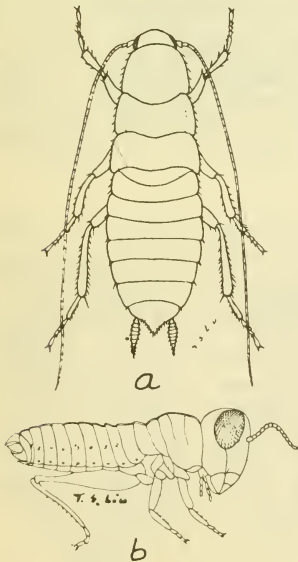


Fig. 61. a, German cockroach, *Blattella germanica* (L.); b, *Melanoplus differentialis* (Thomas).

The number of recorded species is about 22,000. They possess greatly developed powers of running and leaping. The eggs are mostly cylindrical and some are deposited in oothecae. In many Mantidae and Locustidae the nymphs shed a membranous covering shortly after hatching. The wing pads are usually present in the second or third instar. There are commonly 6 instars passed in the nymphal stage.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 11b. Long axis of head and mouth parts project cephalad or cephalo-ventral; the antennae usually located on the head capsule near the mandibles; compound eyes may be absent. . . . . 12
- 12a. Head longer than broad; legs of moderate length and tarsi 4-seg-mented (frequently inconspicuous); color usually dirty white; exo-skeleton frequently soft; ant-like in shape; live within sapwood or dead wood. Fig. 62. . . . . Order ISOPTERA

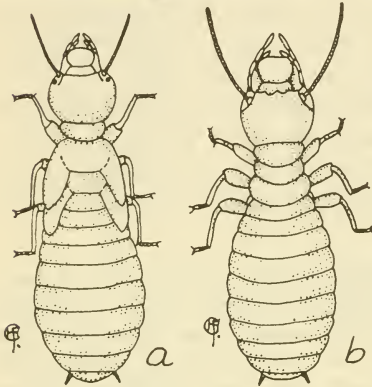


Fig. 62. Termites: a, young queen;  
b, young worker.

The members of this order are known as termites or white ants. There are about 1,900 described species. The social life of the termites includes different types of castes: the reproductive castes which have functional wings, the short winged forms and the wingless forms. The sterile castes are divisible into workers and soldiers.

- 12b. Head distinctly broader than long, tarsi 2 or 3-segmented. . . . . 13
- 13a. Proximal tarsal segments of prothoracic legs<sup>♂</sup> as long or longer than the tibia and strongly dilated (bearing openings to silk glands on ventral surface); proximal tarsal segments of other legs or normal size and shape. Fig. 63. . . . . Order EMBIOPTERA

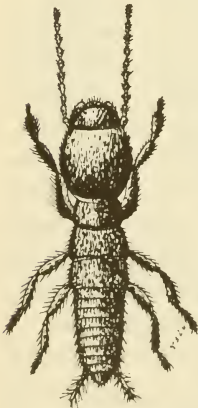


Fig. 63. *Embia major*  
Imms.

About 150 species have been described. These insects generally avoid daylight, living beneath stones or under bark, etc. Silken tunnels are always constructed. When disturbed in these retreats they are able to run backwards or forwards with equal agility. Eggs are elongate-cylindrical with a conspicuous operculum at one pole and are laid in small groups. The newly hatched young of both sexes do not differ in any important characters from the female parent.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 13b. Proximal tarsal segments of prothoracic legs not dilated nor do they differ greatly from the same segments of the other legs; forcep-like structures occur at caudal end of abdomen.

Fig. 64. ....Order **DERMAPTERA**

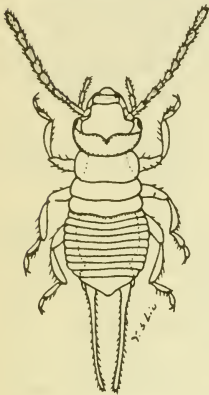


Fig. 64. *Forficula* sp.

About 1,000 species of earwigs are known. They are probably omnivorous but seem to prefer animal food. When alarmed or molested, the extremity of the abdomen is often upraised and the forceps widely opened in a threatening manner. The eggs are deposited in the soil in a group and the female rests over them. The nymphs resemble their parents except the forceps are simple and more or less styliform. They pass 4 to 6 molts before reaching the adult stage.

- 14a. Mouth parts external, visible and in form of a trough-like tube or a cone; wing rudiments usually visible. Fig. 65. ....15

- 14b. Mouth parts internal, short piercing stylets withdrawn into head parallel with meson, with no external labium; wing rudiments absent; tarsi scan-sorial type.

Fig. 66. ....Order **ANOPLURA**

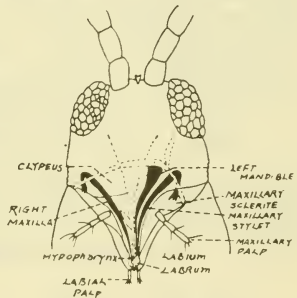


Fig. 65. Head of thrips.

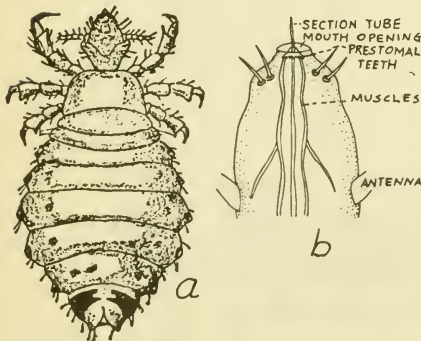


Fig. 66. Hog louse, *Haematopinus adven-ticius* Neum. (U.S.D.A.); b, its mouth parts.

The sucking lice are blood-sucking ectoparasites of mammals and around 500 species have been described. Of these, two species infest man and about a dozen occur on domestic animals. The louse lays up to 300 eggs, which are usually attached to a hair or fibre. The egg period is about a week. Three molts occur during the life and the young resemble the adult in external features.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 15a. Mouth parts in form of a cone located between the ventro-caudal margin of the head and the prothorax showing maxillary palpi and inconspicuous labial palpi; mouth parts are asymmetrical in that only one functional mandible exists which may project a short distance from tip of mouth-cone; tarsi small, apparently 1-segmented, clawless and possess single, protrusible pads; body cylindrical, usually less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch long and pointed at caudal end. Fig. 67. .... Order THYSANOPTERA

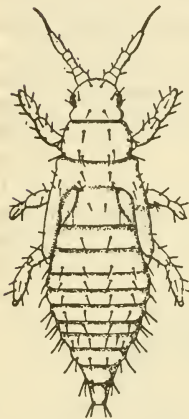


Fig. 67. Green house thrips, *Heliothrips haemorrhoidalis* (Bouche).

Approximately 3,100 species of thrips have been described. They are found among all kinds of growing vegetation, as well as in wood and fungi. They have the habit of curving the apex of the abdomen upwards. They are generally four instars before the adult stage is reached. Parthenogenesis is of frequent occurrence.

A favorite feeding ground for thrips is within the flowers of plants where they often do heavy damage. Both adults and nymphs may be readily shaken from flowers out upon a white cloth or paper and picked up by a small brush moistened in the preservative in which the specimens are being placed. A separate vial should be kept for each species of plant and the species of plant recorded on a paper slip with lead pencil and put in the vial.

- 15b. Mandibles and maxillae usually enclosed within a trough-like tubular labium which usually projects caudad between the thoracic legs; labium may be absent, if labium is cone-shaped, maxillary palpi and labial palpi are absent. Fig. 68. .... 16

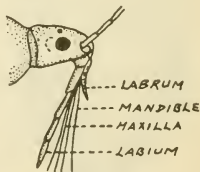


Fig. 68. Piercing and sucking mouth parts.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

16a. The mouth parts, consisting of a segmented labium enclosing needle-like mandibles and maxillae, arise from the cephalic portion of the ventral aspect of the head capsule; in some aquatic species the mouth parts appear to rise from the caudal portion of the head capsule; among these the legs usually show some kind of adaptation for aquatic locomotion and the prothoracic legs may be modified for grasping.

Fig. 69.....Order **HEMIPTERA** page 129

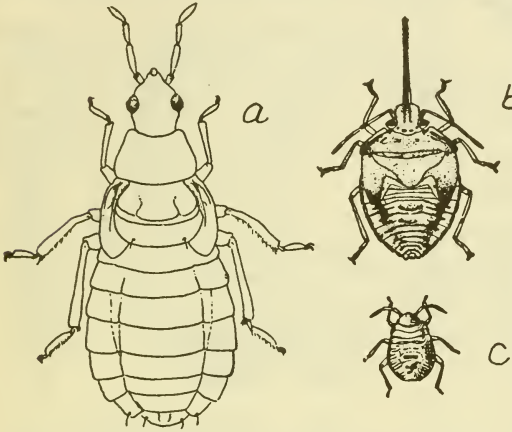


Fig. 69. a, *Triphleps tricolor* (White) (Redrawn from U.S.D.A.); b & c, Green stink bug, *Acrosternum hilare* (Say).

Together with the order Homoptera there are approximately 52,000 species recorded. The Hemiptera are true bugs. The great majority of the species are phytophagous and feed upon the juices of living plants, causing great losses to agricultural crops, but some are predacious and also attack birds and mammals, including man. Most of them are terrestrial and others aquatic or semi-aquatic.

16b. The mouth parts, consisting of a labium (may be absent) and needle-like mandibles and maxillae, arise distinctly from the caudal portion of the head capsule or from the meson between the thoracic legs; no aquatic species.

Fig. 70.....Order **HOMOPTERA** page 135

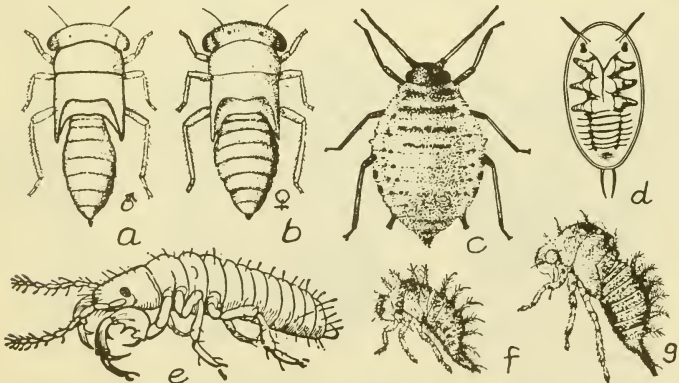


Fig. 70 a & b, *Idiocerus provancheri* Van D.; c, *Aphis*; d, *Aleyrodes* sp., e, *Magicicada septendecim* (L.); f & g, Two different instars of *Stictocephala* sp. (U.S.D.A.)



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

There are about 52,000 species when counting the Homoptera and Hemiptera together. Practically all the members of Homoptera are phytophagous and mostly injurious to agriculture. Except for the cicadas, the Homoptera are mostly small insects. The aphids or plant lice, the scale-insects, the spittle bugs or froghoppers, the treehoppers, the leafhoppers, the whiteflies, the jumping plant lice and the plant-hoppers are all destructive insects.

17a. Never any trace of wings or wing pads; compound eyes never present; worm-like; a feeding and active stage. Fig. 71..LARVAE..18

The members of this active feeding stage of the insects developing by complete metamorphosis vary widely in structure, size, habits, color, etc. They are usually heavy feeders and often represent the most destructive stage of the species. They may be short or long lived which has much to do with the length of the life cycle.

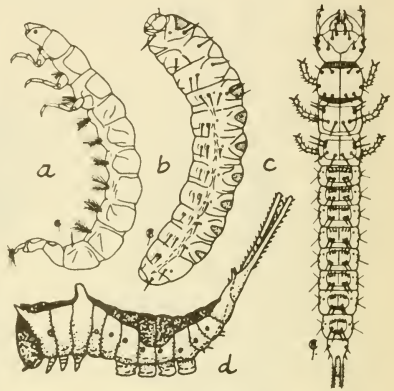


Fig. 71. a, *Hydropsyche* sp.; b, Plum curculio, *Conotrachelus nenuphar* (Herbst.); c, *Pterostichus* sp.; d, *Cerura vinula* L.

17b. Legs and wing pads encased in an extra membrane, not used for locomotion, usually incapable of being moved; compound eyes visible unless adults are eyeless; a nonfeeding and resting stage. Fig. 72. PUPAE.45

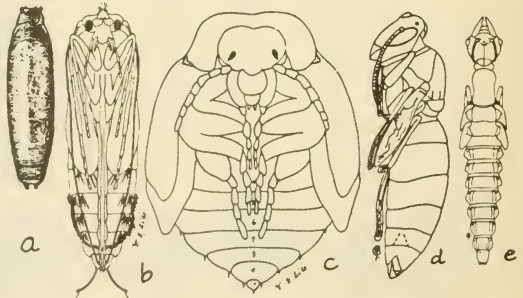


Fig. 72. a, Puparium of frit fly, *Oscinella frit* (L.); b, Pupa of *Hesperophylax* sp.; c, Pupa of *Leptinotarsa decimlineata* (Say); d, Pupa of *Vespa maculata* Kirby; e, Pupa of *Corydalus cornutus* (L.).



LARVAE

- 18a. Thoracic legs absent or represented by paired fleshy swellings on mesothorax and metathorax or on all thoracic segments. ....19
- 18b. Segmented thoracic legs always present on 2 or all thoracic segments. .34
- 19a. Thoracic legs represented by unsegmented, fleshy, paired protuberances (called pedal lobes) on 2 or 3 thoracic legs. Fig. 73. ....20
- 19b. Thoracic legs never present. ....22

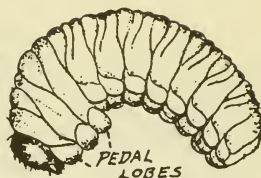


Fig. 73. *Dendroctonus frontalis* Zimm.

- 20a. Adfrontal areas, spinneret, and one or more pairs of simple eyes usually present; prolegs with crochets on 3rd to last abdominal segments (except Nepticulidae without crochets on prolegs of 2-7th abdominal segments). Fig. 74. .Order LEPIDOPTERA page 149

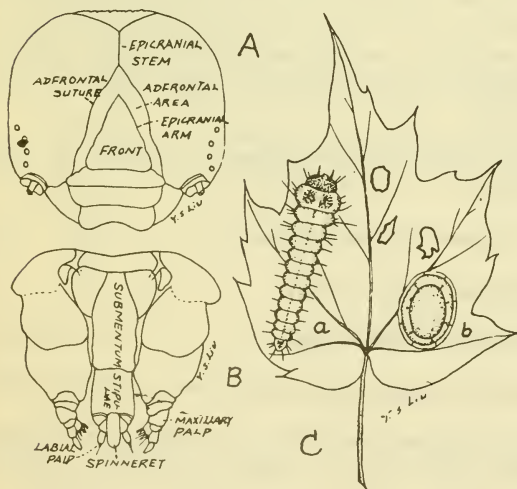


Fig. 74. A, Cephalic aspect of the head of *Ceramixis picta* (Harr.); B, Caudal aspect of the labium of *Cirphis unipuncta* (Haw.); C, The maple case-bearer, *Paraclemensia acerifoliella* (Fitch): a, larva; b, case.

The order is a large one numbering about 110,000 species. Eggs are highly variable in size, shape, sculpturing, color and arrangement. Larvae are known as caterpillars, and have 3 pairs of segmented thoracic legs. The abdominal segments bear prolegs which are armed with crochets. The head bears adfrontal areas.

- 20b. Not so. ....21

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

21a. Body straight and of more or less uniform diameter throughout; usually 2 spiracles on thorax (pro- and meso-).

Fig. 75.....Order HYMENOPTERA page 210



Fig. 75. Clover seed-chalcid, *Bruchophagus funebris* Howard (U.S.D.A.)

At the present time, at least 120,000 described species are known. The ants, bees and social wasps live in colonies. The larvae vary in form ranging from caterpillar-like sawfly larvae to the legless larvae of bees and ants. They live in nests constituting a colony or are solitary. Most are phytophagous but many are parasitic. Hypermetamorphosis occurs among many parasitic forms. Gall-makers and leaf-miners are also found among the members of this order.

21b. Body U-shaped with mid-abdominal segments of greater diameter than those near the caudal and cephalic ends; usually with 1 spiracle on mesothorax. Fig. 76. . . . . Order COLEOPTERA page 72



Fig. 76. Large Chestnut weevil, *Curculio proboscideus* Fab. (U.S.D.A.)

This is the largest order of insects and comprises about 40 percent of all the known members of the class Insecta and no less than 264,000 described species. The habits of the larvae vary greatly, most are terrestrial and phytophagous; some are predacious, or carnivorous, or saprophagous; some are aquatic or semiaquatic. Many species are also inquilines in the nests and communities of other insects.

22a. With partial (caudal portion non-sclerotized or absent) or completed head capsule. ....23

22b. Without a distinct sclerotized head capsule. ....29

23a. With partial sclerotized head capsule. ....24

23b. With complete sclerotized head capsule. ....25

24a. Mouth parts of normal chewing type and antennae distinct...30

24b. Mouth parts highly modified, frequently by hook-like mandibles or apparently absent. Fig. 77.....Order DIPTERA page 189

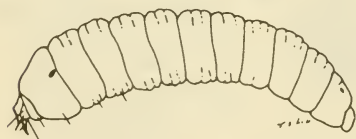


Fig. 77. *Sparnopolius fulvus* Wied.

It includes about 80,000 described species. The larval habits present a great diversity: phytophagous, fungivorous, saprophagous, predacious and parasitic. Most are terrestrial, some aquatic or semiaquatic.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 25a. Head capsule directed distinctly cephalad. ....31  
 25b. Head capsule directed ventrad or somewhat cephalo-ventrad...26



Fig. 78. Black Hills beetle, *Dendroctonus ponderosae* Hopk.

- 26a. Usually with one or more distinct cephalo-caudal folds or depressions on the lateral and ventrolateral aspects of the abdominal segments; body U-shaped.

Fig. 78. .... Order COLEOPTERA page 72

- 26b. Usually without such folds or depressions on lateral or latero-ventral aspects; body not U-shaped. ....27

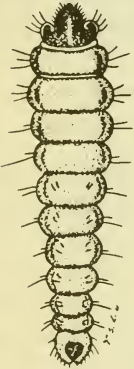


Fig. 79. *Tischeria malifoliella* Clem.

- 27a. Adfrontal areas, spinneret, 1 or more pairs of simple eyes and prolegs with crochets usually present. Fig. 79.... Order LEPIDOPTERA page 149

- 27b. Not so. ....28



Fig. 80. Clover seed chalcid, *Bruchophagus gibbus* (Boheman).

- 28a. Larvae may be pointed at one or both ends and U-shaped; live within plant tissues, or in mud or paper-like cells; one pair of simple eyes may occur. Fig. 80.... Order HYMENOPTERA page 210

# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 28b. Larvae usually long and slender; (a) terrestrial species: spiracles on several abdominal segments, the caudal pair is much larger; (b) aquatic species may have gills or breathing tubes at caudal end of abdomen. Fig. 81.

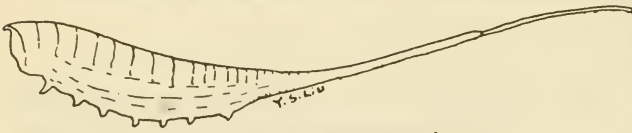


Fig. 81. *Myiatropa flores* L.

Order  
DIPTERA  
page . . . . .189



Fig. 82. *Menomorium minimum* (Bruckley) (U.S.D.A.)

- 29a. Larvae usually U-shaped, more or less pointed at both ends and larger in mid-region; live within plant tissues or live in cells or nests; mouth parts may be reduced to a pair of opposable (or nearly so), sharp-pointed mandibles or to sclerotized plates fused with the cephalic segment or to more fleshy sensoria. Fig. 82.. Order HYMENOPTERA page 210

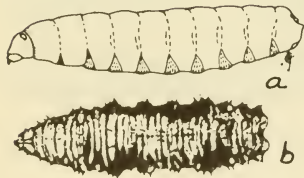


Fig. 83. a, *Rhegoletis cingulata* (Loew); b, A syrphid larva.

- 29b. Larvae spindle-like or peg-like with cephalic end pointed and mouth parts usually 1 or 2 hook-like structures embedded in the prothorax; or the mouth parts greatly reduced; aquatic species may show 1 or several ventral prolegs and a caudal breathing tube or gills.

Fig. 83.. . . . . Order DIPTERA page 189



Fig. 84. a, Flat-headed apple tree borer, *Chrysothrips femorata* (Oliv.) (U.S.D.A.); b, Round-headed apple tree borer, *Saperda candida* Fab. (U.S.D.A.).

- 30a. Labrum a single lobe; ambulatorial warts may occur on abdomen; many species live in wood.

Fig. 84. . . . . Order COLEOPTERA  
page 72

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

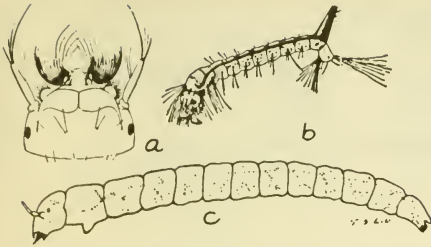


Fig. 85. a, Head of *Culex*; b, *Culex* sp.; c, *Camptocleidius byssinus* Schrank.

30b. Labrum and sometimes clypeus subdivided laterad into 3 parts with groups of setae or spines on the lateral portions; head deeply retracted within prothorax; aquatic or semi-aquatic. Fig. 85.

Order DIPTERA page 189

31a. Head capsule peg-like, etc., variable in shape and size, not of usual rounded or depressed type. Fig. 86.

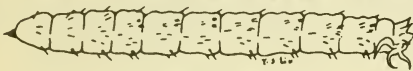


Fig. 86. *Tupule eluta* Loew.

Order DIPTERA page 189

31b. Head capsule round type or depressed type. ....32

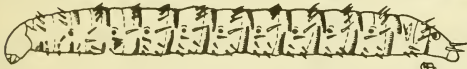


Fig. 87. *Biblio albipennis* Say.

32a. Mouth parts opposable or parable. Fig. 87.

Order DIPTERA page 189

32b. Chewing mouth parts usually distinct. ....33

33a. Abdomen with 11 segments; spiracles, if present, inconspicuous; several long setae on thorax and abdomen.

Fig. 88. ....Order SIPHONAPTERA

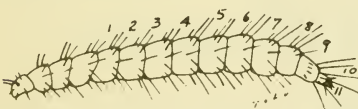


Fig. 88. *Ceratophylus fasciatus* Bosc.

There are approximately 1,100 described species. The larvae are small, cylindrical, nonparasitic and feed upon a miscellaneous diet of vegetable and animal debris and even the feces of their adults. They frequent the

floors of human habitations and the nests of their hosts. When fully grown, the larvae spin small cocoons in which they transfer into the pupae.

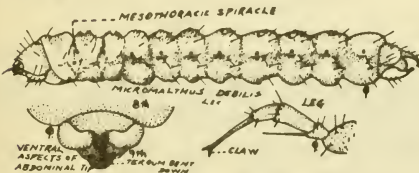


Fig. 89. *Micromalthus debilis* Lec.

33b. Abdomen with 9 or 10 segments; spiracles usually present on mesothorax and most abdominal segments. Fig. 89.

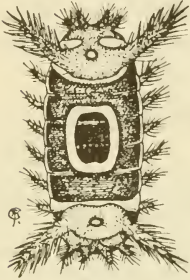
Order COLEOPTERA

page 72



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 34a. Prolegs absent on 1st to 8th abdominal segments (rarely present on 8th). . . . . 35
- 34b. Prolegs present on 2 or more abdominal segments. . . , . . . . 39
- 35a. Head directed cephalad. . . . . 41
- 35b. Head directed ventrad or cephaloventrad. . . . . 36



- 36a. Head capsule may be deeply imbedded in prothorax; may also possess adfrontal area; many species slug-like in form.

Fig. 90. . . . . Order LEPIDOPTERA page 149

Fig. 90. Saddle back-ed slug caterpillar, *Sabine stimulea* (Clemens).

- 36b. Head capsule not deeply embedded in prothorax and without adfrontal areas. . . . . 37

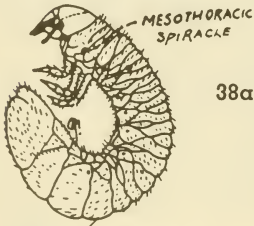


- 37a. One pair of simple eyes present or absent; 2 pairs of spiracles on thorax (pro- and meso-); body usually eruciform. Fig. 91.

Order HYMENOPTERA page 210

Fig. 91. *Vespa macutata* Kirby.

- 37b. Several pairs of simple eyes present. . . . . 38



- 38a. Several pairs of simple eyes may be present; spiracles usually present on mesothorax only; body U-shaped.

Fig. 92. . . . . Order COLEOPTERA page 72

Fig. 92. *Anomala kansanas* Hayes & McColloch.

- 38b. Several simple eyes and in a close cluster usually present; mesothoracic and metathoracic legs distinctly larger and project more laterad than the prothoracic legs. . . . . Order MECOPTERA

This small order represents some 350 species. The larvae are mostly carnivorous, few feed upon vegetable matter. The larvae bear a close resemblance to caterpillars.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS



Fig. 93. *Panorpa rufescens*  
Miyake.

39a. Head usually with more than 10 simple eyes on each side, closely grouped; prolegs on abdominal segments 1st to 8th or 3rd to 8th inclusive; anal end resembles a sucking disk.

Fig. 93. . . . . Order MECOPTERA

39b. Head with never more than 10 simple eyes on each side or entirely wanting. . . . . 40

40a. Prolegs usually present on abdominal segments 3rd to 6th and last, crochets present; adfrontal areas usually present; 1 to 8 pairs of simple eyes usually present.

Fig. 94. . . . . most LEPIDOPTERA page 149

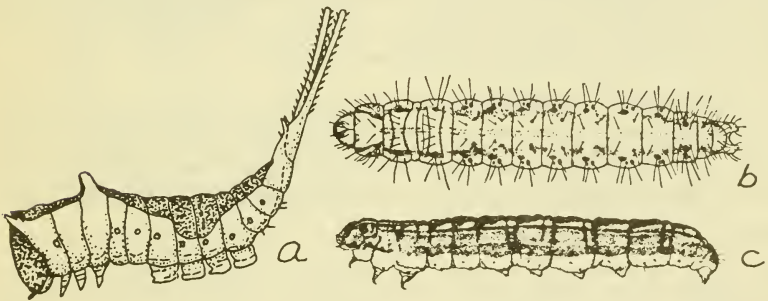


Fig. 94. a, *Cerura vinula* (L. ; b, Corn earworm, *Heliiothis armigera* (Hbn.); c, *Euxoa auxiliaris* Grate.

40b. Prolegs usually present on abdominal segments 2nd to 8th and last, sometimes 2nd to 6th, 2nd to 7th and last; no crochets present; no adfrontal areas; one pair of simple eyes usually present. Fig. 95.

Order HYMENOPTERA page 210



Fig. 95. Imported currantworm,  
*Pteronidea ribesii* (Scopoli).

41a. Thoracic legs with single claw (stout spines about base of claw may create impression that there are 2 or more claws). . . . . 42

41b. Thoracic legs with 2 distinct claws. . . . . 44

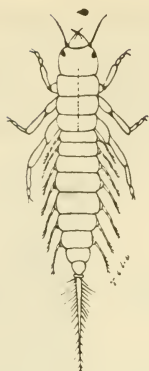


Fig. 96. Smoky alderfly, *Sialis infumata* Newman.

42a. Single claws on thoracic legs; sickle-shaped mandibles and maxillae. Fig. 96.

Family SISYRIDAE,

Order NEUROPTERA page 140

This family contains some 20 species of rather small insects known as spongilla flies since the larvae feed on *Spongilla* and other freshwater sponges, as well as on algae and bryozoa. The small, elongate

eggs are laid in clusters on objects overhanging water from which the larvae drop into the water upon hatching. Pupation takes place under objects along shore or within the soil above the water line. The pupa is covered with a double walled silken cocoon.

Perhaps less than 5000 species of Neuroptera are known and many of these are rare. Some of the larvae are helpful friends of man. Only a few of the families have larvae that are aquatic but all the families are similar in having pupae that are enclosed in a rather spherical cocoon.

42b. Single claws with spur or spine about the base; chewing mouth parts. .... 43



Fig. 97. *Pelto-dytes* sp.

43a. Thoracic legs elbowed and may possess stout spines at base of claw; prolegs and cerci may occur at caudal end of abdomen; aquatic forms may possess abdominal gills.

Fig. 97.....Order COLEOPTERA page 72

This odd appearing larva belongs to the crawling water beetles (family Haliplidae), and is similar to other members of the family. They are small and slender and not likely to be observed unless one is looking for them.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

43b. Larvae live in cases or webs in water; thoracic legs possess spurs on or about the base of claw; no prolegs, but the caudal hooks; gills may be present on thorax and abdomen.

Fig. 98.....Order TRICHOPTERA page 146

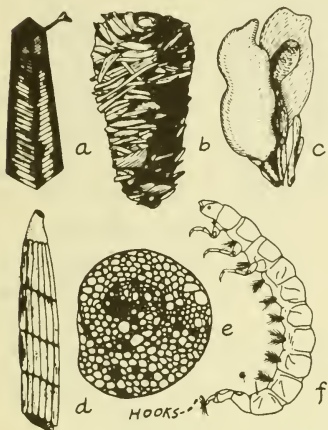


Fig. 98. a, Case of *Brachcentrus* sp.; b, Case of *Limnephilus indivisus* Walker; c, Case of *Astenophylax* sp.; d, Case of *Triaenodes flaviscense* Banks; e, Case of *Helicopsyche* sp.; Larva of *Hydropsyche* sp.

The order has approximately 4,200 described species. The larvae are known as caddisworms and are mostly aquatic, but a few are terrestrial. The eggs are deposited in the debris at the bottom of water or attached to aquatic plants and other objects in the water and are protected with gelatinous masses or strings. The larvae construct characteristic cases or silken retreats. Their food habits are varied, most of them are likely herbivorous but some are known to be carnivorous.

The immense numbers to which these interesting larvae develop make them very important as food for fish and doubtless a very large percentage of the larvae contribute to the growth of fish. Naturally they are used extensively as fish bait. They may be found in abundance in the debris of flowing streams or attached to rocks under water.

Pupation usually takes place within the water, often within the larval case but sometimes outside it and within a silken cocoon. Some species burrow in submerger logs or in crevices in the rocks to pupate. The adult may emerge under water or bring the pupal case to the surface of the water to effect its escape.

44a. Mandibles and maxillae usually of normal chewing type; on the abdomen among terrestrial species cerci usually occur on the 9th segment; among aquatic species the caudal segment(s) may be tube-like or gills may be present. Fig. 99.

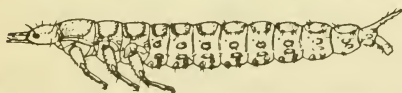


Fig. 99 *Harpalus vagans* LeConte.

Order COLEOPTERA page 72

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

44b. Mandibles and maxillae long and sickle-shaped, of mandibulo-suctorial type; aquatic species may possess abdominal prolegs with hooks at caudal end; gills may be present on most abdominal segments. Fig. 100.....Order **NEUROPTERA** page 140

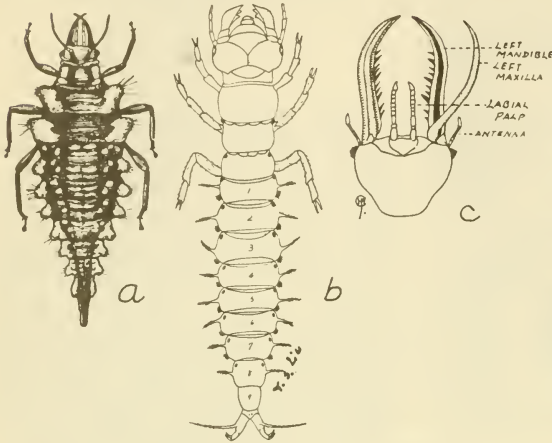


Fig. 100. a, Golden-eye lacewing, *Chrysopa oculata*. Say (Redrawn from Smith); b, *Corydalus cornutus* (L.); c, Mandibulo-suctorial mouth parts.

About 5,000 species of the order have been described. The larvae exhibit great diversity of structure and mode of life, but they are all carnivorous; in a considerable proportion of the species they are aquatic.

## PUPAE and PUPARIA

45a. Appendages, including mouth parts, invisible on exterior, or, if visible, they are fused with each other and to the body wall to form a continuous covering; obtect type. (see Figs. 107 and 109). .....51

45b. Appendages distinctly visible and free, even though held in a fixed position; resembles a mummy; exarate type. (See Figs. 101-106). .....46

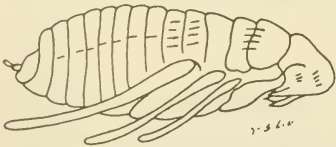


Fig. 101. Pupa of dog flea, *Ctenocephalides canis* (Curtis).

46a. Body strongly compressed; length less than 3 mm.; wing pads absent; antennae minute; mandibles of piercing type; compound eyes absent. Fig. 101. .... Order **SIPHONAPTERA**

46b. Body rounded or flattened, not strongly compressed; antennae and wing pads usually prominent. ....47



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

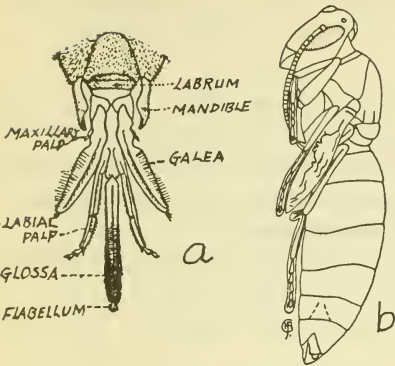


Fig. 102. a, Chewing and lapping mouth parts; b, Pupa of *Vespa macutata* Kirby.

47a. Mouth parts for chewing and lapping; mandibles present; usually a median or bifurcate lobe or tongue (the hypopharynx) arises from the labium; distal segments or ends of the 12 or more segmented antennae usually adjacent to and frequently parallel with the meson; paired ovipositors frequently visible at caudal end; a distinct constriction usually present between the thorax and abdomen. Fig. 102.

most HYMENOPTERA page 210

47b. Mouth parts for chewing only; no distinct tongue or paired ovipositors present. . . . . 48

48a. Antennae long, always with 12 or more segments; wing rudiments not elytra-like. . . . . 49

48b. Antennae shorter than body, if elongated, with numerous stout segments and much longer than the body, usually 11 or less segments and distal segments usually far removed from meson; wing rudiments always elytra-like and located between the distal portion of mesothoracic and metathoracic legs on the ventral aspect; legs elbowed sharply at end of femur.

Fig. 103. . . . . most COLEOPTERA page 72

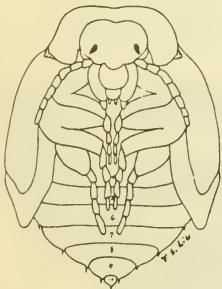


Fig. 103. Pupa of the Colorado potato beetle, *Leptinotarsa decimlineata* (Say).

The pupae are mostly of exarate type, but in some of the Staphylinidae they are obtect. Pupation takes place mostly in earthen cells in the soil, but also occurs within the food plant. Certain Curculionidae make cocoons with the product of the Malpighian tubes, while several of the Lamellicornia use the contents of the posterior caecum. Many Cerambycidae construct pupal cells largely impregnated with carbonate of lime. The pupae of the Coccinellidae are often protected by the persistent remains of the last larval skin.



Fig. 104. Pupa of *Bittacus pilicornes* Westw.

49a. Head abnormal in shape; head capsule and mouth parts elongated; antennae with 16 or more segments, arise from the head capsule near the compound eyes and not from the beak as in some weevils (*Rhynchophora*).

Fig. 104. . . . . Order MECOPTERA

49b. Head normal in shape; mouth parts not greatly elongated. . . . 50

50a. Mandibles short, stout, curved, nearly cylindrical; they usually project cephalad or nearly so and cross each other; thorax and abdomen frequently bearing filamentous gills; usually found in cases or webs constructed by the larvae (*Micropterygoidea* of the *Lepidoptera* may also fall into this group, but they are non-aquatic and not over 4 mm. in length).

Fig. 105. . . . . Order TRICHOPTERA page 146



Fig. 105. Pupa of *Hesperophylax* sp.

The appendages are quite free from the body, and the abdomen is armed with dorsal spines which enable the pupa to work its way out of its habitation. The pupae of some species are able to swim freely.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

50b. Mandibles large and stout never overlapping or crossing each other. Fig. 106.....most NEUROPTERA page 140



Fig. 106. Pupa of *Corydalus cornutus* (L.).

The pupae of this order are free, enclosed in a silken cocoon, curved with the head and tip of abdomen near each other, and with all the appendages visible. Pupation occurs in the soil or in moss, etc. The pupae are able to work their way out to the surface.

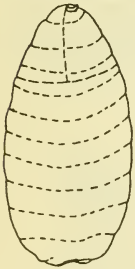


Fig. 107. Puparium of *Zonosemata electa* (Say).

51a. All appendages invisible on exterior, the ectal surface smooth or made up of concentric rings, usually resembling a barrel with two ends somewhat similar (blunt); caudal and thoracic spiracles of last larval stage usually visible as remnants or scars; this hardened or leathery larval exuviae (called puparium) contains a pupa or a hibernating larva within; coarctate type. Fig. 107.

chiefly CYCLORRHAPHA, Order DIPTERA page 189

51b. The cases possessing the appendages of the developing adult visible on the lateral and ventral aspects of the thorax, yet more or less fused to each other and in most instances to the body covering; obtect type. ....52

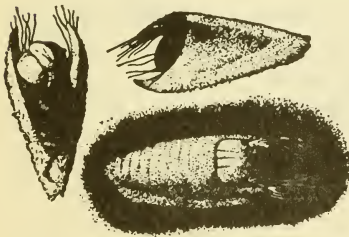


Fig. 108. Pupa and cocoon of *Simulium venustum* Say. (U.S.D.A.)

52a. Distinct respiratory projecting organs present on the dorsocephalic region; one pair of wings. Fig. 108.

.....chiefly NEMATOCERA, Order DIPTERA page 189

52b. Distinct respiratory projecting organs absent on the dorsocephalic region; spiracles usually present on mesothorax and some of the abdominal segments; functional mandibles absent (except among Micropterygoidea); paired galeae of maxillae usually present along ventro-meson; antennae adjacent to mesal margins of wings; 2 pairs of wings, outer pair may conceal inner pair.

Fig. 109.....most LEPIDOPTERA page 149

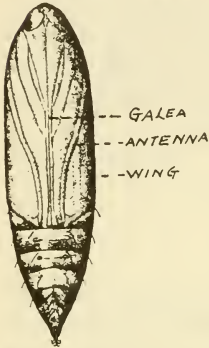
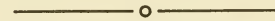


Fig. 109. Pupa of the European corn borer, *Pyrausta nubilalis* (Hubner).

The lepidopterous pupae are of 2 main types: (1) the Incompletæ which have the appendages often partially free and more than 3 of the abdominal segments are mobile. Dehiscence is accompanied by the freeing of segments and appendages previously fixed. The pupae exhibit considerable power of motion, usually emerging from the cocoon to allow of the escape of the adult. (2) The Obtectæ which are smooth and rounded and the only free segments in both sexes are the 4th, 5th and 6th. Dehiscence takes place by an irregular fracture. The pupa rarely emerges from the cocoon and a cremaster is generally present.

## PICTURED-KEYS TO FAMILIES



### ORDER PROTURA

1a. Meso- and metathoracic spiracles and trachea present.

Fig. 110. ....Family EOSENTOMIDÆ



Fig. 110. *Eosentomen ribagai* Berlese.

Practically nothing is known concerning the life histories of the proturans. They have been found in damp situations under leaves, bark and stones, in rotten wood, decaying vegetation, turf and humus soils.

1b. Spiracles and trachea absent. ....2

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

2a. Abdominal terga each with one or three transverse sutures.

Fig. 111. ....Family ACERENTOMIDAE



The proturans are minute whitish organisms. The largest species scarcely attain 2 mm. in length. They are widely distributed in Europe, Asia and America.

Fig. 111. *Acerentomon doderoi*  
Silvestri.

2b. Abdominal terga without transverse sutures.

Fig. 112. ....Family PROTENTOMIDAE



Proturans are peculiar in that they walk only on the middle and hind legs and hold the fore legs in front and above the head.

Fig. 112. *Microentomon perpessillum*.

## ORDER THYSANURA

1a. 3 caudal appendages; compound eyes present (Suborder Ectotrophi). (See Figs. 113 and 114). ....2

1b. 2 caudal appendages; compound eyes absent (Suborder Endotrophi). (See Figs. 115 - 118). ....3



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

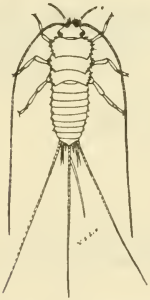
- 2a. Compound eyes large, more or less contiguous; ocelli present; styli present on thoracic coxae, also on abdominal segments 2-9. Fig. 113. ....Family MACHILIDAE



Bristletails, silverfish, and slickers are the common names. The family contains about 150 described species. They inhabit grassy and woody areas. Some are tenants in caves and some inhabit the nests of termites. At least six instars have been reported. In the first two instars scales and styli are absent.

Fig. 113. *Machilis maritima* Leach.

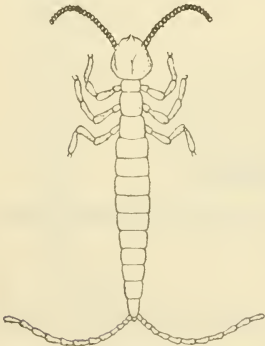
- 2b. Compound eyes small, widely separated; ocelli absent; styli absent on thoracic coxae, but present on abdominal segments 7-9 or 8-9. Fig. 114. ....Family LEPISMIDAE



About 200 species are known. They are commonly called the bristletails, fish-moths or slickers. They are found in dry hot places, among leaves, under stones, debris, caves, buildings and the nests of ants and termites. They feed upon dry vegetation or plant products. They are also fond of paste, glue and rayon cloth. The silverfish, *Lepisma saccharina* L. and the fire brat, *Thermobia domestica* (Packard) are common in buildings.

Fig. 114. *Thermobia domestica* (Packard).

- 3a. Styli absent on 1st abdominal segment. Fig. 115. ....Family CAMPODEIDAE



About 75 species have been described. Most species are from the Palaearctic, Nearctic and Neotropical regions with very few known in the Oriental regions. They are blind and occur in damp places.

Fig. 115. *Campodea fragilis* Meinert.

3b. Styli present on first abdominal segment. .... 4

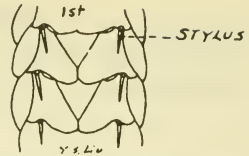


Fig. 116. Ventral aspect of 1st to 4th abdominal segments

4a. Cerci with glandular opening at apex.  
 Fig. 117. .... Family PROJAPYGIDAE



Fig. 117 *Anajapyx vesiculosus* Silvestri.

There are only 5 species known, distributed in the Mediterranean regions of Southern Europe and Northern Africa, and in Mexico and South America. They are small blind insects with a pair of short segmented cerci.

4b. Cerci without opening at apex.  
 Fig. 118. .... Family IAPYGIDAE



Fig. 118. *Iapyx minemus*.

About 100 species are described. The young have segmented cerci which are replaced in the last moult by pincerlike cerci. It is reported that the eggs and young are carried beneath the body of the female for protection.

ORDER COLLEMBOLA

1a. Body more or less cylindrical and elongate; abdomen plainly segmented. ....(Suborder Arthropleona).....2

1b. Abdomen subglobular, segmentation obliterated or vestigial. ....(Suborder Symphyleona).....3

2a. Prothorax well developed, with a definite tergum; cuticle usually granulated. Fig. 119. ....Family PODURIDAE



Fig. 119. *Achorutes armatus* Nicolet.

These are the springtails and snowfleas including about 315 species. The young live a secluded life and are often white or colorless. The snowflea, *Achorutes nivicolus* Fitch is a widely distributed species which often occurs on the surface of snow.

2b. Prothorax greatly reduced, without a tergum; cuticle not granulated. Fig. 120. ....Family ENTOMOBRYIDAE



Fig. 120. *Entomobrya laguna* Bacon.

There are some 600 described species. The marsh springtail, *Isotoma palustris* (Muller), is a widely distributed species. It may be found in wet leaves, moss and soil and often appears on the surface of fresh water pools.

3a. Antennae stout, not longer than head; thorax very large. Fig. 121. ....Family NEELIDAE

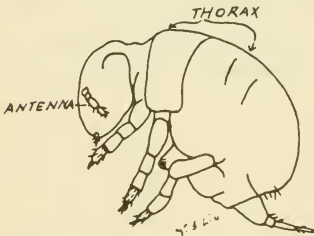


Fig. 121. *Neelides folsomi*.

A small family composed of 4 species. They are globular and bristly with very short antennae inserted on the middle of front of the head, with eyes present or absent and with the furcula about twice the length of the antennae. They may be found under dead bark and in decaying vegetation.

- 3b. Antennae more slender longer than head; thorax not exceptionally large. Fig. 122. . . . . Family SMINTHURIDAE

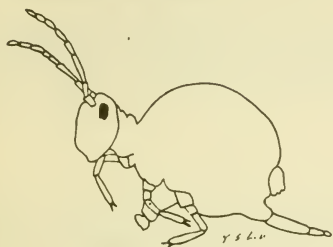


Fig. 122. *Sminthurides lepus* Mills.

The family is composed of about 200 species. These springtails are very active and often occur in immense numbers in moist places on the surface of the soil or water. The head is vertical and the antennae inserted on the back portion of the head. Various species of living plants constitute their food.

## ORDER PLECOPTERA

(This key is compiled from Claassen and Frison.)

- 1a. Gills present on first 2 or 3 abdominal segments.

- Fig. 123. . . . . Family PTERONARCIDAE

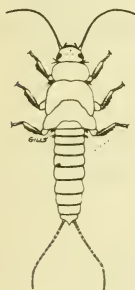


Fig. 123. *Pteronarcella badia* Hagen.

The naiads of this family are all herbivorous. They live in the small upland spring brooks and are unable to move rapidly, getting around awkwardly. Upon being taken out of the water, they curl up, remaining motionless for some time.

- 1b. Gills absent on first 2 or 3 abdominal segments. . . . . 2

- 2a. Venter of thorax covered with large over-lapping shield-like plates.

- Fig. 124. . . . . Subfamily PELTOPERLINAE, PERLIDAE

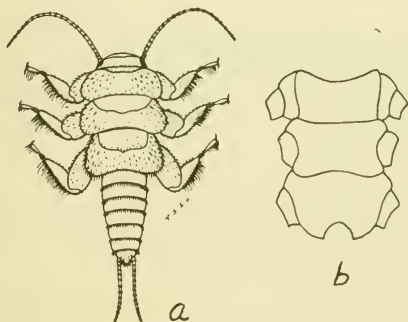


Fig. 124. a, *Peltoperla arcuata* Ndm.; b, Ventral aspect of thorax.

The single genus *Peltoperla* is distributed over the Eastern, Southern and Western United States. The naiads are herbivorous and can be distinguished from other families by the large shield-like pro-, meso- and metanotum, short abdomen, wide legs, short cerci and head bent under the body.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

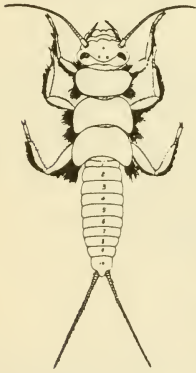
- 2b. Venter of thorax not covered with large over-lapping shield-like plates. . . . . 3
- 3a. Gills present on thorax. . . . . 4
- 3b. Gills absent on thorax. . . . . 5
- 4a. Gills on the venter of prothorax. Fig. 125. . .Family NEMOURIDAE



The naiads are herbivorous and live mostly in the small upland spring brooks. They are uniform throughout in color.

Fig. 125. *Nemoura sinuata* Wu.

- 4b. Gills on all three thoracic segments. . . . . Family PERLIDAE



The naiads are all carnivorous and brightly colored. They are mostly found in rather swift running water.

This is the best represented family of stoneflies. It furnishes in its immature as well as its adult stages great quantities of food for fish, but at the same time competes with them for many of the smaller forms of insect life in the water.

Fig. 126. *Togoperla media* (Walker).

- 5a. 1st and 2nd tarsal segments together less than half as long as 3rd; labrum 3 to 4 times as wide as long; labium 2-lobed; body flattened and brightly colored. Fig. 127. . . . . Family PERLIDAE



The eggs of stoneflies are very small but are produced in immense numbers,—as many as 6000 for one individual. They are laid directly into the water.

Fig. 127. *Perla verticalis* Banks.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

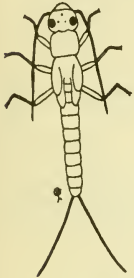
5b. 1st and 2nd tarsal segments together as long as 3rd or at least more than half as long; labrum not very much wider than long; labium 4-lobed; body more or less cylindrical, not brightly colored; herbivorous.

Fig. 128. ....6



Fig. 128. Labium: a, *Perla hastata* Banks; b, *Nemoura venosa* Banks.

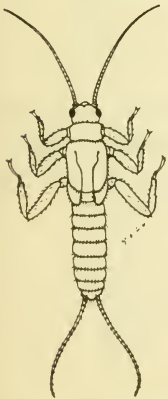
6a. Hind wing pads diverging considerably outward from the body. Fig. 129. ....Family NEMOURIDAE



The members of this family are widely distributed. Their tails are characteristically short. The adults are usually dark colored.

Fig. 129. *Leuctra decepta* Classen.

6b. Hind wing pads wider than fore wing pads and not divergent outward from the body. Fig. 130. ....Family CAPNIIDAE



The smallest known stoneflies belong to this comparatively small family.

The naiads are herbivorous and live in small water-courses. The color of the naiads is brown or blackish.

Fig. 130. *Capnia vernalis* Newport.

**ORDER EPHEMEROPTERA**

- 1a. Thorax shield-like covering most abdominal segments; gills invisible. Fig. 131. ....Family PROSOPISTOMATIDAE

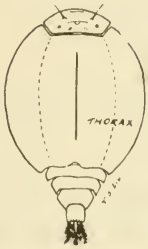


Fig. 131. *Prosoptoma foliaceum* Fourcroy.

The naiads are flat and disk-like. The gills are concealed by a large shield-like thorax. Their three caudal filaments are short. They live in swift running water, and are vegetable feeders. It belongs to the old world.

- 1b. Thorax not shield-like; gills visible. ....2

- 2a. Mandibles extending anteriorly far beyond the head; gills plumose. ....3

- 2b. Mandibles short; gills not plumose. ....6

- 3a. The projecting part of mandible shorter than head; gills extending laterally. Fig. 132. ....Family POTAMANTHIDAE



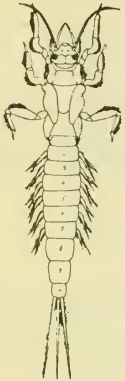
Fig. 132. *Potamanthus* sp.

The naiads live upon silt-covered stones and muddy bottoms. The mandibles are tusk-like but short. The gills are long and plumose. They feed on the vegetation of their area.

- 3b. The projecting part of mandible almost as long as head; gills extending dorsally. ....4

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

4a. Front of head with 2 tubercles; mandibles curved outwards at tips; antennae with long cilia. Fig. 133. . . . .Family EPHEMERIDAE

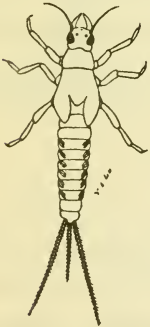


The naiads live in muddy bottoms or muddy water. The body is elongate and more or less cylindrical. The mandibles are long and tusk-like. The caudal filaments are long and almost equal in length.

Fig. 133. *Hexagenia bilineata* Say.

4b. Not so. . . . .5

5a. Abdomen with 6 pairs of gills; median caudal filament shorter than the lateral ones. Fig. 134. . . . .Family PALINGENIIDAE

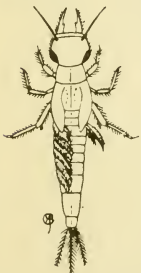


The mandibles are large and protruding. The median caudal filament is shorter than the lateral ones. They live in Europe and Asia.

Fig. 134. *Palingenia* sp.

5b. Abdomen with 7 pairs of gills; median caudal filament as long as, or longer than the lateral ones.

Fig. 135. . . . .Family POLYMITARCIDAE



The naiads sometimes dig into mud. The mandibles are long and tusk-like. The caudal filaments are equal in length.

Fig. 135. *Campsurus* sp.

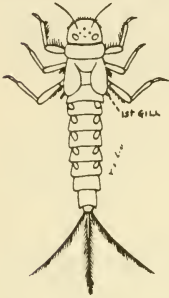
HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

6a. Eyes dorsal; body distinctly flattened. ....7

6b. Eyes lateral; body more or less cylindrical. ....8

7a. Caudal filaments shorter than abdomen; 1st pair of gills inserted on the ventral side of 1st abdominal segment.

Fig. 136. ....Family OLIGONEURIELLIDAE

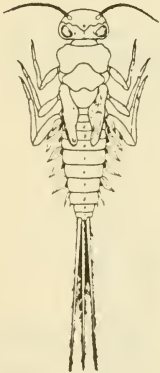


The body is more or less cylindrical with small and short gills. Long hairs may be present on the fore legs.

Fig. 136. *Oligoneuria* sp.

7b. Caudal filaments longer than abdomen; 1st pair of gills inserted on the lateral sides of 1st abdominal segment.

Fig. 137. ....Family ECDYURIIDAE



The naiads live in rapid waters, clinging to stones and other objects, where the waves break over lake shores and on the margins of gently flowing streams. The body and appendages are flattened, the head large and the gills leaf-like.

Fig. 137. *Heptagenia* sp.

8a. Abdominal gills inserted dorsally. ....9

8b. Abdominal gills inserted laterally. ....10

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

9a. The 2nd pair of abdominal gills normal, not covering the remaining pairs. Fig. 138. ....Family EPHEMERELLIDAE



The naiads are often strikingly colored. In some species the venter of abdomen forms a sucking disk. They often cling to the underside of stones in swift waters.

Fig. 138. *Ephemerella* sp.

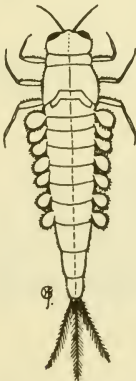
9b. The 1st pair of abdominal gills very small; 2nd pair exceptionally large and covering the remaining pairs. Fig. 139. ....Family CAENIDAE



The naiads live in sand or mud bottoms. They are peculiar in having the second pair of gills covering the succeeding pairs. The members of this family are mostly of small size.

Fig. 139. *Tricorythus* sp.

10a. Claws of middle and hind legs as long as the tibiae. Fig. 140. ....Family AMETROPODIDAE



There is rather wide variation in the naiads of the Mayflies. A few are even thought to be predacious. They apparently molt many times during their development. They belong in the eastern hemisphere

Fig. 140. *Ametropus* sp.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 10b. Claws of the middle and hind legs shorter than the tibiae. . . . 11  
 11a. Lateral caudal filaments with very short hairs, or with longer hairs fringed on both sides.

Fig. 141. . . . . Family LEPTOPHLEBIIDAE



The naiads are elongated with three equal caudal filaments as long as the body and with long slender leaf-like or string-like gills.

Fig. 141. *Blasturus cupidus* Say

- 11b. Lateral caudal filaments with long hairs on the inner side. 12  
 12a. Latero-caudal margin of the abdominal segments with tooth-like projections. Fig. 142. . . . . Family SIPHLONURIDAE



The naiads live in rapidly running water and sometimes occur in cataracts and waterfalls. They have small head and slender legs.

Fig. 142. *Siphonurus alternatus* Say.

- 12b. Latero-caudal margin of the abdominal segments without tooth-like projection. Fig. 143. . . . . Family BAETIDAE



The naiads are found in waterfalls, cataracts, slow currents and open waters. They may be also found among aquatic plants in still pools. The family is large and widely scattered.

Fig. 143. *Gallihaetis fluciuans* (Walsh).

ORDER ODONATA

1a. Abdomen stout, usually wider than head, with 3 short, triangular or spine-like appendages at tip (Suborder Anisoptera, dragonflies). Fig. 144. . . . .3

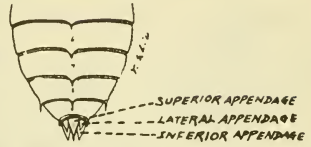


Fig. 144. Dorsal aspect of abdominal segments of a dragonfly naiid.

1b. Abdomen slender, usually narrower than head, with 3 long, leaf-like tracheal gills at tip (Suborder Zygoptera, damselflies). Fig. 145. . . . .2

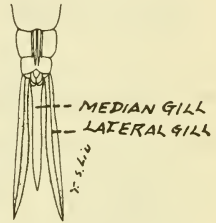


Fig. 145. Dorsal aspect of abdominal segments of a damselfly naiid.

It will be noted that both the immature stages and the adults of the damselflies can be separated at sight from those of the dragonflies. One does not always find distinguishing characters so obvious.

2a. 1st antennal segment shorter than the remaining segments together; lateral gills 2-sided.

Fig. 146. . . . . Family COENAGRIONIDAE

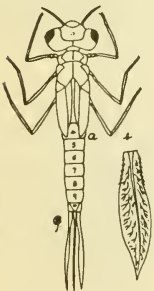
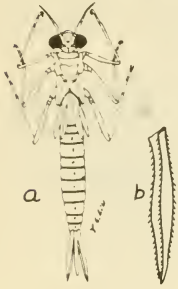


Fig. 146. a, *Ischnura* sp.; b, a lateral caudal gill.

The naiads of this large and prolific family are very abundant. A large percentage of these delicate creatures are eaten by fish and other aquatic associates, but large numbers escape to become adults.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

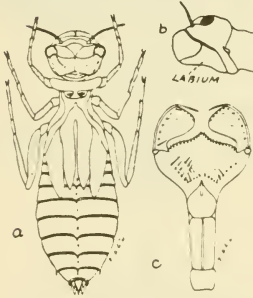
2b. 1st antennal segment as long as the remaining segments together; lateral gills 3-sided. Fig. 147. . . . . Family AGRIONIDAE



This family of broadwinged damselflies is much smaller than the preceding one. The naiads are larger and sturdier.

Fig. 147. a, *Agrion* sp.; b, a lateral caudal gill.

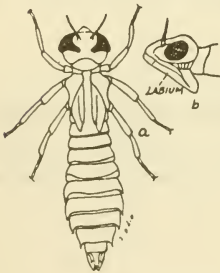
3a. Labium spoon-like. Fig. 148. . . . . Family LIBELLULIDAE



This is the large family of dragonflies in point both of abundance and numbers of species. The immature forms may be found among the debris of almost any shallow body of water.

Fig. 148. a, *Libellula luctuosa* Burmeister; b, Lateral aspect of head; c, labium.

3b. Labium not spoon-like. Fig. 149. . . . . Family AESCHNIDAE



The members of this family average larger than those of the preceding family, though there are much fewer individuals and species. Their naiads while not as abundant may be collected rather readily.

Fig. 149. a, *Aeschna* sp.; b, Lateral aspect of head.

ORDER ORTHOPTERA

1a. Hind tarsi with 1 segment or obsolete.

Fig. 150. ....Subfamily Tridactylinae, GRYLLIDAE

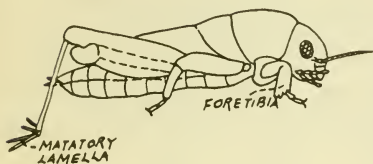


Fig. 150. *Ellipes minuta* Scudder.

They are pigmy crickets, scarcely more than 10 mm. long, with the fore tibiae fossorial and the hind femora enlarged for jumping. The terminal end of hind tibiae provided with movable elongated plates called matatory lamellae. They inhabit damp places and near water. They can also burrow into sand.

1b. Hind tarsi with more than 1 segment. ....2

2a. Fore legs greatly modified, either adapted for grasping Fig. 151a or for digging Fig. 151b. ....3

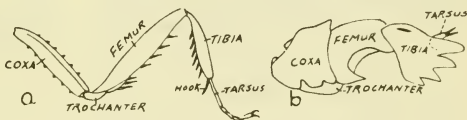


Fig. 151. a, Fore leg of a mantid; b, Fore leg of a mole cricket.

2b. Fore legs normal. ....4

3a. Fore legs adapted for digging.

Fig. 152. ....Subfamily Gryllotalpinae, GRYLLIDAE

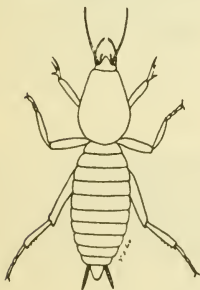


Fig. 152. Mole cricket, *Scapteriscus didactylus* Latr.

The subfamily consists of about 50 species. They are called mole crickets, because of their fossorial fore tibiae and their burrowing habits. They live in mud along waterways and are vegetable feeders.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3b. Fore legs adapted for grasping. Fig. 153. . . . .Family MANTIDAE

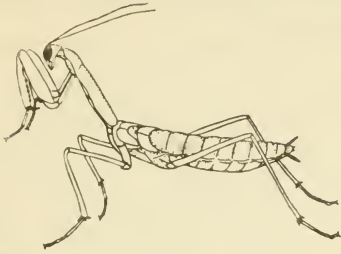


Fig. 153. Chinese mantis, *Tenodera aridifolia sinensis* Saussure.

About 1,550 species are described. The name, praying mantids, is applied because their fore legs are held in front of the face as if praying. They appear to be wholly carnivorous and devour only living prey.

4a. Hind legs much larger than other pairs, adapted for jumping. (See Fig. 159). . . . .5

4b. Hind legs of usual size, not adapted for jumping. (See Fig. 161). . . . .9

5a. Antennae usually much shorter than the body; auditory organ when present, near the base of the abdomen. Fig. 154. . . . .6

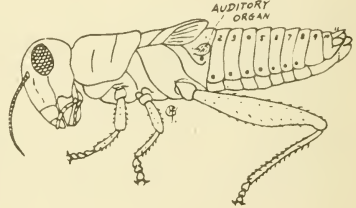


Fig. 154. A grasshopper, showing the auditory organ on abdomen.

5b. Antennae usually as long as or longer than the body; auditory organ, when present, near the base of the fore tibiae. Fig. 155. . . . .7

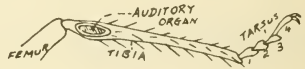


Fig. 155. A fore leg with auditory organ on tibia.

6a. Fore and middle tarsi 2-segmented, hind tarsi 3-segmented; pronotum greatly extended, often beyond the tip of the abdomen. Fig. 156. . . . .Family TETTIGIDAE

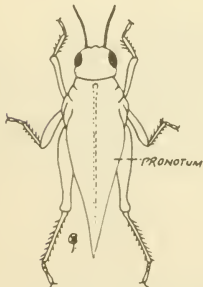


Fig. 156. *Acrydium granulatum* (Kirby).

About 650 species have been described. They are herbivorous and found in wet places. They can swim and dive in water. Eggs are laid in the soil. These are the pygmy or grouse locusts.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

6b All tarsi 3-segmented; pronotum normal size.

Fig. 157. ....Family LOCUSTIDAE

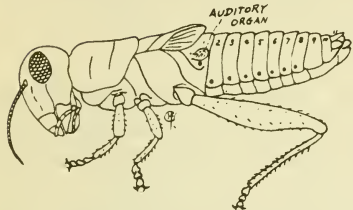


Fig. 157. *Melanoplus femur-rubrum* (DeGeer), 3rd instar.

The family contains about 8,000 known species. The common name grasshopper is generally applied to the nonmigratory species and locust is applied to the migratory forms. They are all destructive to crops. The migratory locust, *Locustia migratoria* L. is the most serious pest and is distributed widely in most of the Eastern Hemisphere. It breeds in dry grassy areas. Grasshopper eggs are often laid underground.

7a. Tarsi 4-segmented. ....8

7b. Tarsi 3-segmented. Fig. 158. ....Family GRYLLIDAE



Fig. 158. Snowy tree-cricket, *Oecanthus niveus* (DeGeer) (N. Y. Agr. Expt. Sta.).

About 1,150 species have been described. They are generally called crickets, and are both herbivorous and carnivorous. They hide themselves in holes in the ground or under stones and debris and some live on trees, shrubs and grass. Nymphs and adults are often found together.

8a. Auditory organ usually present on the fore tibiae.

Fig. 159. ....Family TETTIGONIIDAE



Fig. 159. Mormon cricket, *Anobrus simplex* Haldeman.

They are commonly called long-horned grasshoppers or katydids, about 7,000 known species. They can produce stridulatory sounds by the fore wings of the males. They are both herbivorous and carnivorous, living in grass or trees. The eggs are often inserted in the stems of plants.

8b. Auditory organ never present on the fore tibiae.

Fig. 160. ....Subfamily Stenopelmatinae, TETTIGONIIDAE



Fig. 160. *Stenopelmatus longispina* Brunner.

The subfamily includes about 300 described species. They are mostly carnivorous, living in caves, in holes, under stones and other concealments. These camel crickets and related forms are given their own family by some systematists. The adults are wingless and strongly resemble the nymphs.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

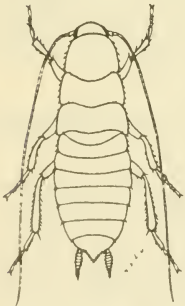
- 9a. Prothorax small, meso- and metathorax modified either long and in linear form or short and in leaf form; antennae shorter than the body; cerci not segmented. Fig. 161. . . . .Family PHASMIDAE



They are commonly known as walkingsticks and leaf insects because of their body structures closely resemble the twigs or leaves. Over 700 species are described. All of them are vegetable feeders. The nymphs and adults of many species appear much alike for most adults are wingless. The eggs are often dropped at random.

Fig. 161. Walk-  
ingstick, *Di-*  
*pheromera fe-*  
*morata* (Say).

- 9b. Prothorax large, projecting over the head; antennae as long as or longer than the body; cerci segmented. Fig. 162. . . . .Family BLATTIDAE



About 1,200 species of cockroaches are known and they occur under dead leaves, moss, refuse and on flowers and bushes. The most familiar domesticated species are the German cockroach, *Blattella germanica* (L.), the American cockroach, *Periplaneta americana* (L.), and the Australian cockroach, *Periplaneta australasiae* (Fab.). They have been distributed throughout the entire world and are household pests. The females may often be seen carrying their egg cases which are presently left for hatching.

Fig. 162. German  
cockroach, *Blat-*  
*tella germanica* (L.).

## ORDER COLEOPTERA

(The key is mainly compiled from Boving and Craighead, 1931,  
and Van Emden, 1942.)

- 1a. Legs consisting of 5 segments (coxa, trochanter, femur, tibia and tarsus) and 1 or 2 distinct claws (except in instars of *Micromalthus* which are legless or have 2-segmented legs). Fig. 163. . . . .2



Fig. 163. A leg.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

1b. Legs consisting of 4 segments (coxa, trochanter, femur and tibia) and 1 claw; or less than 4 segments; or even vestigial or absent. Fig. 164...13



Fig. 164. A leg.

2a. Mandible with molar structure. Fig. 165. ....3



Fig. 165. A right mandible.

The food habits of an insect possessing chewing mouth parts can usually be judged fairly accurately by the size and character of the mandibles. These structures are "first line" organs when it comes to securing food. It is interesting to note that insect jaws meet on a vertical plane instead of a horizontal one as with the mammals.

2b. Mandible without molar structure. Fig. 166. ....4



Fig. 166. A left mandible.

3a. 9th abdominal segment extended terminally into a single, conical, straight process; ventrally with a simple, transverse, narrow sternal plate; legs short, conical; claws of subequal size. Fig. 167. ....Family CUPESIDAE

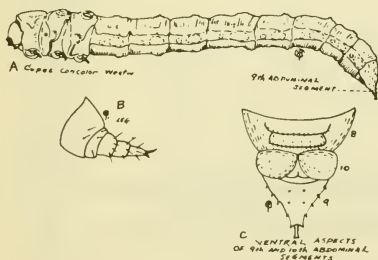


Fig. 167. a, *Cupes concolor* Westn.; b, a leg; c, ventral aspect of 9th and 10th abdominal segments.

A very small family ranging into both hemispheres, including Australia. The larva of *Cupes* is a wood borer, as are most of the other members of the family. They are medium sized borers, and may be found under bark.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3b. 9th abdominal segment with terminal process bent downward and directed toward a similar but upward bent process from the sternal plate; leg (in instar in which fully developed) provided with a long, slender tarsus carrying 2 claws of equal length.

Fig. 168. .... Family MICROMALTHIDAE

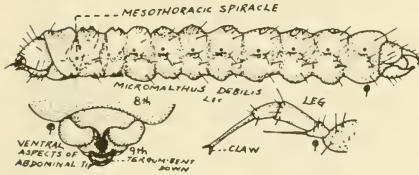


Fig. 168. *Micromalthus debilis* Lec.

It consists of a single North American species, *Micromalthus debilis* Lec. The biology of this insect is most remarkable. It combines in its life cycle 7 or 8 forms of larvae and exhibits both oviparous and ovoviviparous paedogenesis.

4a. Cardo very large; 2 pairs of gills on the tip of 9th abdominal segment. Fig. 169. .... Family GYRINIDAE

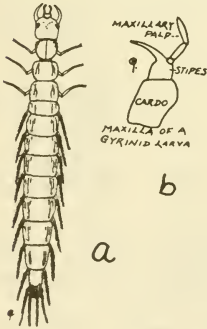


Fig. 169. a, *Dineutes* sp.; b, Maxilla of a gyrid larva.

They are called whirligig beetles or surface swimmers. There are about 450 described species. The eggs are laid on objects in water. The larvae are aquatic and predacious. They pupate in flimsy cocoons attached to rocks, water plants, etc.

4b. Cardo of normal moderate size or small; never have 2 pairs of gills on the tip of 9th abdominal segment. Fig. 170. .... 5

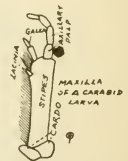


Fig. 170. Maxilla of a carabid larva.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

5a. Labial palpi latent; mentum and ligula fused into an unpaired anteriorly bilobed piece. Fig. 171. . . . . Family RHYSODIDAE

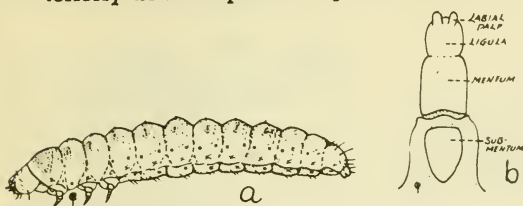


Fig. 171. a, *Clinidium sculptile* Newn.; b, Ventral aspect of labium.

Rather more than 100 species have been described. Nothing appears to be known about their metamorphoses. The larvae are probably predacious. Look for them under decaying bark.

5b. Labial palpi distinct and segmented.

Fig. 172. . . . . 6

6a. 9th abdominal segment present; 8th abdominal segment never terminal. (See Fig. 174). . . . . 7

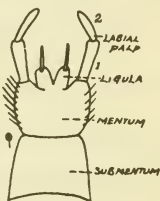


Fig. 172. Ventral aspect of labium.

6b. 9th abdominal segment rudimentary; 8th abdominal segment long, conical, appearing as the terminal segment of the body. (See Fig. 177). . . . . 10

7a. 10th abdominal segment developed as a pygopod for locomotory purpose. . . . . 8

7b. 10th abdominal segment not developed as a pygopod. Fig. 173. . . . . Family HALIPLIDAE



Fig. 173. *Pelto-dytes* sp.

They comprise about 100 widely distributed species. Their larvae possess segmentally arranged groups of fleshy process and are aquatic insects. Larvae and adults live together among aquatic plants and may be collected readily by raking these plants out on to the shore.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

8a. 2 or 3 pairs of hooks present on tergum of 5th abdominal segment. Fig. 174. ....Family **CICINDELIDAE**



Fig. 174. *Megacephala carolina* (L.).

The family consists of about 2,000 species and their adults are called tiger beetles. The larvae live in vertical or slanting, cylindrical burrows often a foot or more deep in which they can move up and down by aid of the dorsal hooks of the fifth abdominal segment. They are predacious and found along the sandy banks of rivers and bodies of water, in wet meadows, and in damp partially shaded canyons.

8b. No hooks on 5th abdominal tergum. ....9

9a. Terminal setae of tarsus much shorter than claws; retinaculum single or absent. Fig. 175. ....Family **CARABIDAE**

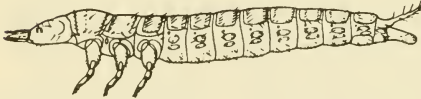


Fig. 175. *Harpalus viridiaeneus* Beauvois.

The family is very large, comprising around 21,000 described species. The larvae are carnivorous and living in the soil, grass, under debris or dead bark. Pupation takes place in a cell in the ground. They are elongate, usually flattened and grub-like, and often very active.

9b. Terminal setae of tarsus much longer than claws; retinaculum bicuspidate. Fig. 176. ....Family **OMOPHRONIDAE**

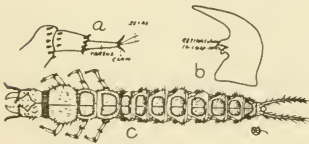


Fig. 176. a, leg of *Omophron*; b, Mandible of *Omophron*; c, *Omophron* sp.

The members of this small family live in the sand and debris along water courses. They are comparatively rare.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 10a. Head nutant; mandible falcate and simple; 8th abdominal spiracle absent. Fig. 179. ....Family HYGROBIIDAE

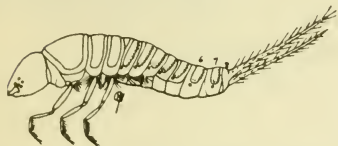


Fig. 177. *Hydrobia tarda* Herbst.  
(Redrawn from Boving and  
Craighead).

This is a small family comprising all aquatic species. They are found in the Eastern Hemisphere.

- 10b. Head porrect; mandible not simple; 8th abdominal spiracle terminal. (See Fig. 178). ....11

- 11a. Mandible with distinct retinaculum, inner margin neither sulcate nor tubular; legs fossorial.  
Fig. 178. ....Subfamily Noterinae, DYTISCIDAE

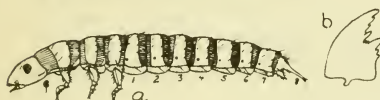


Fig. 178. a, *Noterus* sp.; b, mandible.

The members of this small subfamily are rather minute in size. Their larvae must feed, of course, on tiny animal forms.

- 11b. Mandible without distinct retinaculum, inner margin either sulcate or tubular; legs ambulatory or natatory.  
(See Fig. 179). ....12

- 12a. Prothoracic presternum large and subquadrate; gula present, subquadrate or triangular; gular suture double or anteriorly bifurcate. Fig. 179. ....Family DYTISCIDAE

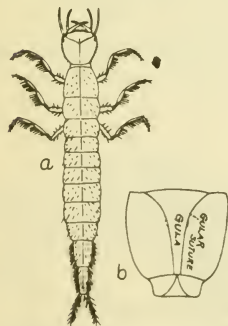


Fig. 179. a, *Dytiscus* sp.;  
b, Ventral aspect of head.

The family contains more than 2,000 species. Their adults are known as predacious diving beetles, water beetles and dytiscids. The larvae are predacious and feed upon many kinds of aquatic animals including mollusks, worms, tadpoles, salamanders and fishes. Because the hunting life, the larvae are sometimes called water tigers. Their pupae are terrestrial and pupation takes place above the water line.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

12b. Prothoracic presternum transverse, narrow and band-shaped; gula absent; gular suture median and simple.

Fig. 180. ....Family AMPHIZOIDAE

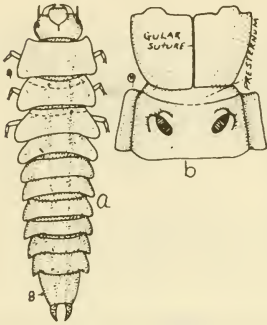


Fig. 180. a, *Amphizoa* sp.; b, Ventral aspect of head and prothorax.

The family consists of the single genus, *Amphizoa*, with only 3 aquatic species. They inhabit rocks and logs in fresh water streams along the Pacific coast of N. America and 1 species in Tibet.

13a. 8th abdominal segment glandular, discoidal and terminal.

Fig. 181. ....Family PAUSSIDAE

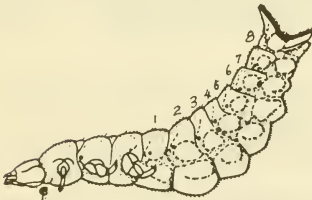


Fig. 181. *Paussus kannegieteri* Wasm.

More than 300 species are known. They are adapted to a myrmecophilous life. The metamorphoses of this family have received very little attention. Its known members are all exotic.

13b. 8th abdominal segment not glandular and not discoidal. ....14

14a. Cerci segmented, individually movable. ....15

14b. Cerci solid or absent. ....28

15a. (a) Galea usually inserted on the palpifer; if absent, then the abdomen with only 8 distinct segments; or (b) galea less often inserted on stipes (to the outside of lacinia), but then the mandible serrate, the cerci 2-segmented, and the 10th abdominal segment almost always with a pair of recurved ventral hooks.

Fig. 182. ....114



Fig. 182. Maxilla.

# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

15b. Galea never inserted on the palpifer; often absent or fused with the lacinia; abdomen always with 9 to 10 distinct segments; if the mandible is serrate, the cerci absent or 1-segmented.

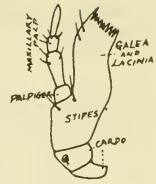


Fig. 183. Maxilla.

Fig. 183. ....16

16a. Mandible with a usually large, asperate or tuberculate molar part.

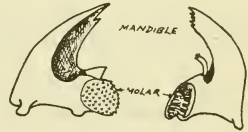


Fig. 184. Two mandibles.

Fig. 184. ....17

16b. Mandible without asperate or tuberculate molar part, usually without molar part. ....21

17a. 10th abdominal segment provided with a pair of recurved hooks.  
Fig. 185. ....Subfamily Limnebiinae, HYDROPHILIDAE

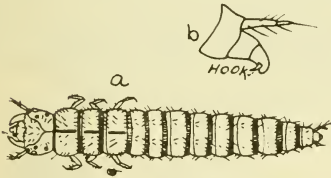


Fig. 185. a, *Ochthebius mipresus*; b, Tip of abdomen.

The members of this small subfamily are for the most part found on the Pacific coast, and are comparatively small in size.

17b. 10th abdominal segment without terminal hooks but sometimes with a pair of long setae. ....18

18a. Spiracles absent; balloon-like appendices on prothorax, 1st and 8th abdominal segments; antenna very short and 2-segmented.  
Fig. 186. ....Subfamily Hydroscaphinae, HYDROPHILIDAE



Fig. 186. *Hydroscapha natans* Lec.

It is a small subfamily, comprising only 4 or 5 species adapted for an aquatic life. They occur in running water, including hot springs. The one American species is found in our Southwest.

18b. Spiracles present; no balloon-like appendices; antenna 3-segmented. ....19

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

19a. Apex of mandible multiserrate; cerci short, 1-segmented.

Fig. 187. . . . . Family PTILIIDAE

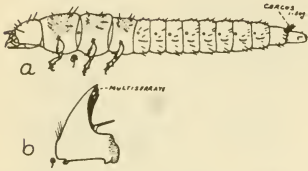


Fig. 187. a, *Nossidium americanum* Mots.; b, Mandible.

The larvae and adults of these 'feather-winged' beetles live in decaying wood, fungi and in ant's nests. They are very minute, some of the smallest known beetles belong to this family.

19b. Apex of mandible bifid or trifid; cerci 2-segmented, last segment often multiannulated. (See Fig. 188). . . . . 20

20a. Mandible with vestigial retinaculum.

Fig. 188. . . . . Family LEPTINIDAE

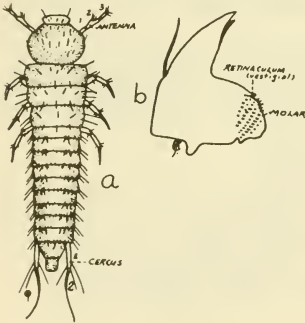


Fig. 188. a, *Leptinus testaceus* Mull; b, Mandible.

This is a very small family. Its habits are practically unknown but they have been found in rotten wood, in the nests of birds and of field mice.

20b. Mandible with distinct retinaculum or prostheca, or both.

Fig. 189. . . . . Subfamily Anistominae, SILPHIDAE

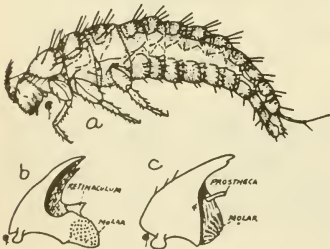


Fig. 189. a, *Prionochoeta opaca* Say; b, Mandible with retinaculum; c, Mandible with prostheca.

They are found among damp herbage, in fungi, under bark, etc. They are fairly abundant but their very small size results in their being rather poorly known.



21a. Mala (lacinia and galea) and stipes fused.

Fig. 190. ....22



Fig. 190. Maxilla

21b. Mala segment-like, movable. Fig. 191. ..Family STAPHYLINIDAE

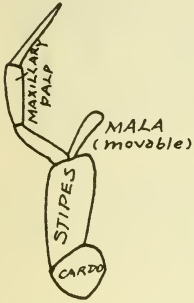


Fig. 191. Maxilla.

This is one of the largest family of insects and including more than 20,000 species. The adults are called rove beetles. The larvae are typically campodeiform and often closely resemble the Carabidae. The larvae of certain species are definitely known to be carnivorous and predacious. Certain larvae are pupal parasites of cyclorrhaphous Diptera and undergo hypermetamorphosis.

22a. Mandible with apex simple, recurved and bent away from the sagittal plane of the larva.

Fig. 192. ....Family PLATYPSYLLIDAE

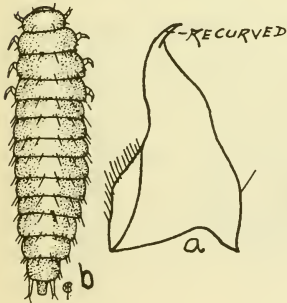


Fig. 192. a, Mandible; b, *Platypsyllus castoris* Rits.

The family consists of a single species, the beaver beetle, *Platypsyllus castoris* Rits., which is an ectoparasite of the beaver in Europe and America. The biology of the immature stages is not known.

22b. Mandible with apex differently shaped, never recurved. ....23

23a. Galea present, often developed as a small, hairy lobe on top of lacinia. Fig. 193. ...24

23b. Galea and lacinia fused. ....25

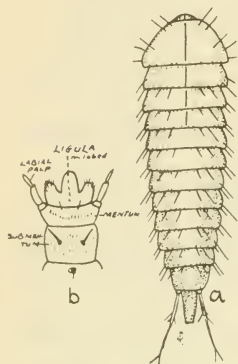


Fig. 193. Maxilla.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

24a. Lacinia with entire surface asperate; terminal segment of maxillary palpus subulate; ligula trilobed.

Fig. 194. ....Family SCAPHIDIIDAE

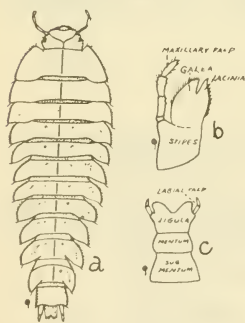


The members of this family are fungivorous or occur in rotting wood both as larvae and adults. Less than 100 species are known in North America although some species are very common.

Fig. 194. a, *Scaphisoma convexum* Say; b, Ventral aspect of labium.

24b. Lacinia not asperate, or only along posterior margin; terminal segment of maxillary palpus not subulate; ligula bilobed.

Fig. 195. ....Family SILPHIDAE



The carrion beetles, burying beetles and sexton beetles are the common names of the adult members of this family which include about 1,600 described species. The eggs are laid in dead animal bodies and their larvae lead a saprozoic life. However, some are predacious and feeding upon snails or other insects; others are found among plants and fungi.

Fig. 195. a, *Silpha* sp.; b, Mandible; c, Labium.

25a. Ligula either deeply bilobed anteriorly, or absent; labrum fused to become nasale.

Fig. 196. ....26



Fig. 196. Dorsal aspect of head.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 25b. Anterior margin of ligula entire; labrum distinct, often movable.  
 Fig. 197. ....most STAPHYLINIDAE

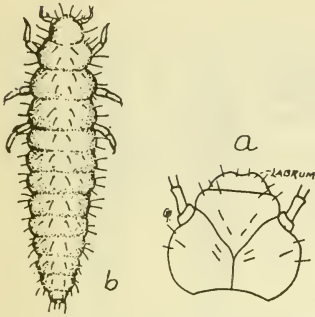


Fig. 197. a, Dorsal aspect of head; b, *Oligota oviformis* Casey.

The short elytra of the adult staphylinids result in the larva and adults often resembling each other rather closely. The many species range rather widely in size.

- 26a. Cerci long and 2-segmented; antennae more than twice as long as head; ligula bilobed; 6 ocelli on each side.  
 Fig. 198. ....Subfamily Steninae, STAPHYLINIDAE



Fig. 198. *Stenus* sp.

The members of this subfamily are rather short and thick as compared with most staphylinids. They live in sand and debris at the edge of water courses and seem to be predacious.

- 26b. Cerci absent or small and immovable; antennae not longer than head; ligula absent; less than 6 ocelli on each side, sometimes no ocelli. ....27

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 27a. Terga expanded laterally; body oval; antenna club-shaped.  
 Fig. 199. .... Family **SCYDMAENIDAE**



Fig. 199. A scydmaenid larva.

It includes more than 1,200 species of small insects. They mostly occur in moss, under bark or in ants' nests. Scarcely anything appears to be known of the biology of the family.

- 27b. Terga not expanded; antenna not club-shaped.  
 Fig. 200. .... Family **PSELAPHIDAE**



Fig. 200. **Euplectus confluens**  
 Lec.

The species mostly live in ants' nests and the adult bears a resemblance to ants. The biology of the larvae is little known. More than 3,000 species have been described. Their size is small.

- 28a. Hypermetamorphosis present; mandible without molar part; maxillary mala short, thick, almost vestigial; gular area present; cerci absent. Fig. 201. .... 29

Hypermetamorphosis is a condition that prevails among a relative small percentage of insect species. Some of the instars are radically different from each other in habits and form or in some cases additional instars occur between the full grown larva and the adult.



Fig. 201. Ventral aspect of head.

- 28b. No hypermetamorphosis; different combination of characters than in 28a. .... 31

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

29a. Gula well developed; maxillae inserted at a considerable distance in from anterior margin of prosternum; labial palpi 2-segmented. Fig. 202. ....Family MELOIDAE

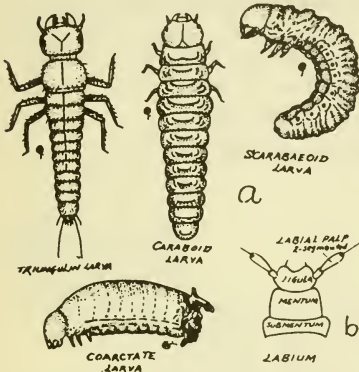


Fig. 202. a, Forms of meloid larvae; b, Ventral aspect of labium.

This family comprises no less than 2,500 species. The adults are called blister beetles. Eggs are laid in masses in the soil. The newly hatched larvae called triangulins or primary larvae, are campodeiform. They are active and feed on egg masses of other insects in the soil, or they may attach themselves to certain adult hosts and ride to the nests and feed upon the food or devour the young. Then they transform into scarabaeoid type of larvae, and some into still a third type of larvae. A prepupa stage is followed by the pupa and then the adult.

29b. Gula area short; maxillae extending posteriorly to near the anterior margin of prosternum; labial palpi not segmented, reduced to warts, or entirely absent. Fig. 203. ....30

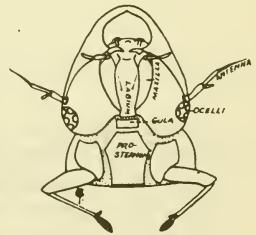


Fig. 203. Ventral aspect of head and prothorax of *Rhipiphorus solidoginia* Pierce.

30a. 1 ocellus on each side of head.

Fig. 204. ..Genus *Tetraonyx*, MELOIDAE

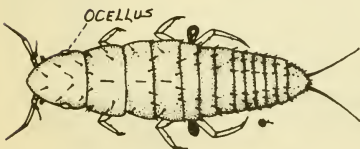


Fig. 204. *Tetraonyx quadrimaculata* F. 1st instar.

The larvae of this genus seem so different from other Meloids that some systematists would erect a family (Tetraonycidae) for the few members of the genus.



# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

30b. Several ocelli placed together on each side of head.

Fig. 205. ....Family RHIPIPHORIDAE

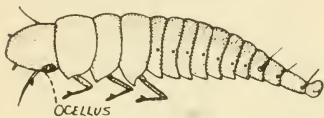


Fig. 205. *Phipiphorus solidaginis* Pierce.

The larvae of this family are of great interest on account of their parasitic habits. *Metaecus paradoxus* is a parasite in nests of *Vespa*, but the eggs are laid in old wood. The larva becomes an endoparasite and then changes to ectoparasite. Pupation takes place in the cell of the host.

31a. Mandible bearing an accessory ventral condyle; with either a free galea well separated from a distinct lacinia or with cribriform spiracles, or with both characters.  
Fig. 306. ....32

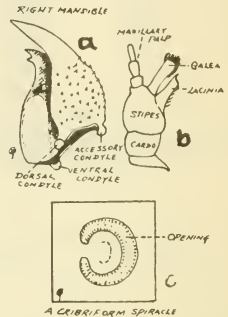


Fig. 206. a, A right mandible; b, A maxilla; c, A cribriform spiracle.

31b. Characters not so combined. ....40

32a. Median epicranial suture present; 10th abdominal segment well developed, usually about as large or larger than the well developed 9th abdominal segment, sometimes fused with it dorsally, when shorter than 9th abdominal segment, then provided with a pair of large anal pads. ....33

32b. Median epicranial suture absent; 10th abdominal segment much smaller than the well developed 9th abdominal segment and always without anal pads, or both 9th and 10th abdominal segments vestigial. ....37

33a. Stridulating organ present on mesothoracic leg; abdominal terga not plicate.  
Fig. 207. ....34



Fig. 207. A mesothoracic leg.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

33b. Stridulating organ absent, or present as teeth on dorsal inner margin of maxillary stipites, usually working against a granulate or striped area on ventral side of mandibles; abdominal terga plicate. Fig. 208. ....35

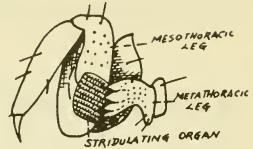


Fig. 208. A mesothoracic leg.

34a. Anus longitudinal between 2 large oval, often sclerotized pads at end of body; metathoracic legs normal. Fig. 209. ....Family LUCANIDAE

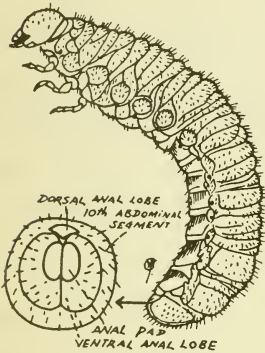


Fig. 209. *Sinodendron cylindricum*.

The family consists of around 900 species. The adults are called stag beetles. Their larvae live largely in decaying wood. The larval stage lasts 4 to 6 years to complete their development. Pupation takes place in a cell formed of gnawed wood fragments. Some species are very large.

34b. Anus transverse; end of body different; metathoracic legs reduced and much shorter than mesothoracic legs. Fig. 210. ....Family PASSALIDAE

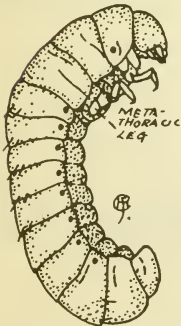


Fig. 210. *Passalus* sp.

About 300 species have been described. It was reported that the parent beetles stay with the larvae and chew wood into a condition suitable for their progeny. The metathoracic legs of the larvae are greatly modified and adapted to form an organ which works across a striated area on the meso-coxa, thus producing a squeaking noise.

35a. Lacinia and galea separate. Fig. 211. . . . . 36



Fig. 211. Maxilla.

35b. Lacinia and galea fused. Fig. 212. . . . . Family SCARABAEIDAE

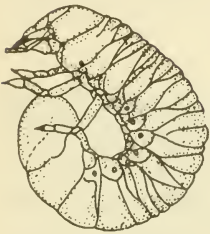


Fig. 212. *Anomala kansanas* Hayes & McColloch.

About 15,000 species are known in this very large family. The larvae are typically scarabaeoid type, living mostly in the soil and feeding upon plant tissues, but some forms are recorded as being myrmecophilous. The white grubs are best known larval pests while the Japanese beetle, June beetle and rose chafer are the serious adult pests. The world's largest beetles belong here, and of course the largest grubs.

One fairly large and widely represented group within this family, the Tumble bugs, are unique in their method of providing for their young. A pair of beetles make a large ball of mammalian dung which they roll, often for a considerable distance, and bury in an excavation which they prepare. An egg is laid in the ball and the grub makes its entire growth within the ball.

36a. Stridulating organs absent. Fig. 213. . . . . Family TROGIDAE

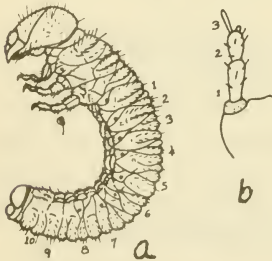


Fig. 213. a, *Trox scaber* L.; b, Antenna.

It is a small family composed of three genera and about 160 species. They mostly live in dried decomposing animal matter, and may be found in carrion.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

36b. At least maxillary stridulating teeth present.

Fig. 214. ....Family SCARABAEIDAE



Fig. 214. a, White grub; b, Maxilla.

The larvae of many Scarabaeids live in dung or other decaying organic matter and are of little consequence except to act as scavengers. Many others feed on the roots of growing plants and are highly destructive.

37a. 8th abdominal segment of normal form and not terminal; 9th abdominal segment large. (See Fig. 215). ....38

37b. 8th abdominal segment large and terminal; 9th abdominal segment vestigial. (See Fig. 217).....39

38a. 10th abdominal segment almost obliterated and without soft, terminal prolongation; ocelli absent.

Fig. 215. ....Family DASCILLIDAE

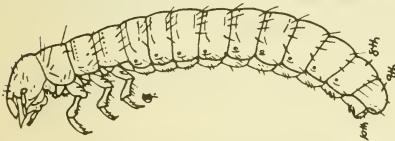


Fig. 215. *Dascillus davidsoni* Lec.

This is a group of small to medium terrestrial and aquatic beetles. The larvae have been found in pasture land. Some 500 species are known.

38b. 10th abdominal segment well developed, with soft terminal unpaired, 2-segmented and retractile prolongation; 5 ocelli on each side. Fig. 216. ....Family HETEROCERIDAE

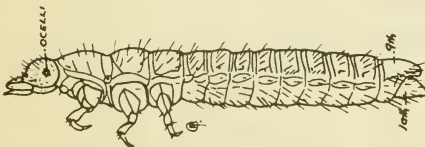


Fig. 216. *Heterocercus ventralis* Melsh.

The family is very widely distributed and about 100 species are known. The larvae live in galleries which they excavate in the mud bordering pools and streams.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

39a. 3 terminal tufts of gills retractile into a pocket; antenna long and multisegmented; one large ocellus and one small ocellus on each side of head. Fig. 217. . . . . Family HELODIDAE



Fig. 217. *Prionocyphon discoideus* Say.

It is a small family. Their larvae are aquatic. They are all of small size.

39b. Gills absent; antenna 3-segmented; 5 ocelli on each side of head. Fig. 218. . . . . Subfamily Nosodendrinae, BYRRHIDAE

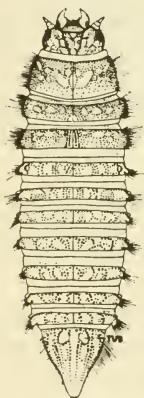


Fig. 218. *Nosodendron californicus* Horn.

The single genus *Nosodendron* contains 3 described species, 2 from North America and 1 from Europe. The larvae have been taken in fungi, under bark and around the flowing sap of trees. They are thought to be predators on dipterous larvae. No information concerning the pupae is available.

40a. Gular region or median gular suture present or absent; when absent, with mandibles having mola or prostheca or extraordinary structures except a pseudomola. Fig. 219. . . . . 41

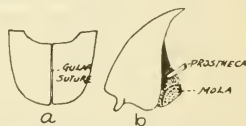


Fig. 219. a, Ventral aspect of head; b, Mandible.

40b. Gular region or gular suture absent; mandibles with pseudomola or no mola. . . . . 118



# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

41a. Maxillary articulating area either large or indistinct; when indistinct, mandibles with mola (except in Catogenidae, Epilachninae and Lamiinae). Fig. 220. . . . .42



Fig. 220. Maxilla.

41b. Maxillary articulating area absent, or very small, or concealed by mentum, not large and cushioned; mandible without molar part. . . . .43

42a. Maxillary mala divided into a well developed lacinia and a finger-shaped, 1 or 2-segmented galea; mandible without a distinct molar part but with a longitudinal series of hairs at the base. Fig. 221. . . . .Family BYRRHIDAE

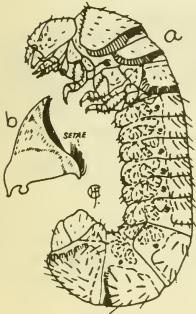


Fig. 221. a, *Byrrhus fasciatus* Forst.; b, Mandible.

The family has about 500 species. The adults are called pill beetles. Their life histories are in need of study. The larvae of *Byrrhus pilula* are found beneath turf or moss. The larvae of *Amphicyrta dentipes* are often injurious to wild and cultivated plants.

42b. Mala simple, or division either indicated by distal notch or present with lobe-like galea; mandibles with or without a molar part but without a longitudinal series of hairs at the base. . . . .66

43a. Either with exposed gills below the entire abdomen, or with movable 10th abdominal segment usually covering retractile gills at the end of the body, or with mamillaeform appendices from the 10th abdominal segment; mandibles never perforate or deeply cleft. Fig. 222. . . . .44

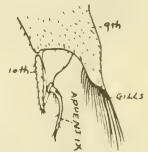


Fig. 223. Tip of abdomen.

43b. Gills or anal appendices usually absent; when present, then mandible either perforate or deeply cleft longitudinally. . . . .48

44a. Movable 10th abdominal segment absent. . . . .45

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 44b. Movable 10th abdominal segment present below 9th abdominal tergum. Fig. 223. . . . . 47
- 45a. Body cylindrical, without ventral gills. . . . . 46

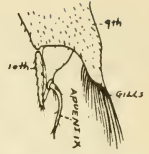


Fig. 222. Tip of abdomen.

- 45b. Body flat, broadly oval; with ventral gills freely exposed from 2nd to 6th abdominal segments. Fig. 224. . . . . Family PSEPHENIDAE

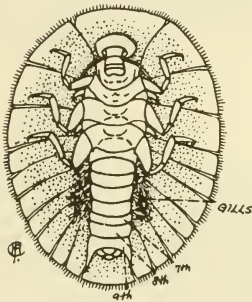


Fig. 224. *Psephenus lecontei* Lec.

The larvae are aquatic and attach to stones in swift-flowing streams, rapids, cascades and waterfalls. They are flattened and disc-like. Their pupae are submerged and firmly attached to stones.

- 46a. Antennae comparatively long; 10th abdominal segment with a pair of large lobes usually carrying spinose diverticles. Fig. 225. . . . . Subfamily Ptilodactylinae, HELODIDAE

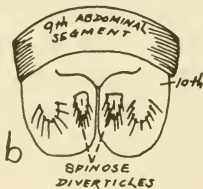


Fig. 225. a, *Ptilodactyla serricollis* Say; b, 9th and 10th abdominal segments.

The biology of this subfamily needs to be investigated. The larvae of *Ptilodactyla serricollis* Say are found in the damp soil of forests. Only a few species are known in North America. Some systematists believe that this subfamily belongs elsewhere or as a separate family.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 46b. Antennae short; 10th abdominal segment without diverticles.  
 Fig. 226. . . . . Genus *Eurypogon*, DASCILLIDAE

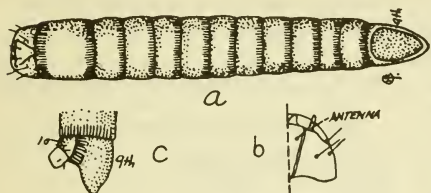


Fig. 226. a, *Eurypogon niger* Melsh; b, Half aspect of head; c, 9th and 10th abdominal segments.

Some 500 rather widely distributed species are known for this family. They are found in damp places and are small sized. The adults are dull colored and of rather soft texture.

- 47a. 8 pairs of abdominal spiracles, all projecting, either cribiform or biforous but of a deviating sinuous type.  
 Fig. 227. . . . . Family CHELONARIIDAE

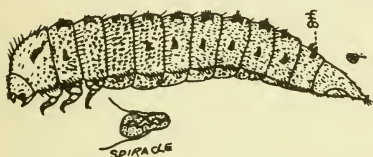


Fig. 227. *Chelonarium* sp.

Only one species of this small family is known in the United States.

- 47b. Abdominal spiracles vary from 1 to 8 pairs, either annuliform or regularly biforous, never sinuous.  
 Fig. 228. . . . . Family DRYOPIDAE

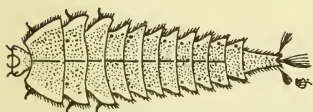


Fig. 228. *Helmis aeneus* Muller.

The larvae of *Dryops* is stated to live in damp earth beneath stones. The larva of one species of *Psephenus* is said to resemble a trilobite except that its lateral margins are notched. More than 400 species are known. The adults are named "long-toed water beetles."

- 48a. 9th abdominal segment operculate, vertical and terminal.  
 Fig. 229. . . . . Family RHIPICERIDAE

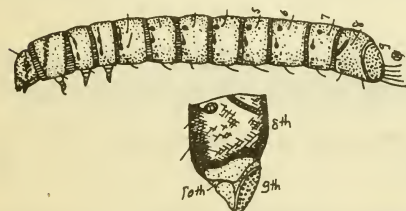


Fig. 229. *Zenoa picea* Beauv.

This small family of "cedar beetles" are dull colored and of medium to large size. Their life history is not well known.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

48b. 9th abdominal segment otherwise. . . . . 49

49a. Spiracles cribriform; 10th abdominal segment terminal; prothorax large and more or less depressed, usually covered with a plate both dorsally and ventrally.

Fig. 230. . . . . Family BUPRESTIDAE



Fig. 230. Western cedar borer, *Trachykele blondeli* Mars.

The flat-headed borers are a large family which consists of about 8,000 described species. The larvae are blind and legless but capable of excavating in all kinds of dry and moist wood. They live in the trunks, limbs and roots of trees. A few are leaf miners and gallmakers; some are highly destructive to fruit and forest trees.

49b. Not so. . . . . 50

50a. Labrum present. Fig. 231. . . . . 60

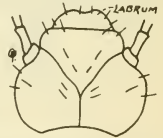


Fig. 231. Dorsal aspect of head.

50b. Labrum fused. Fig. 232. . . . . 51

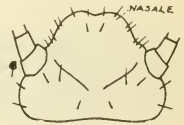


Fig. 232. Dorsal aspect of head.

51a. Frontal sutures present (except in Throscidae and Eucnemidae the head capsule and mouth parts are reduced or much specialized). . . . . 52

51b. Frontal sutures absent (except in Brachypsectrini and Lampyridae, both of which have piercing mandibles). . . . . 56

52a. Head capsule and mouth parts very much reduced or extremely specialized. (See Fig. 233). . . . . 53

52b. Head capsule and mouth parts slightly reduced or entirely normal. . . . . 54

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

53a. Legs short but with normal segments.

Fig. 233. . . . . Family THROSCIDAE

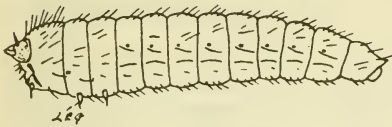


Fig. 233. *Throscus* sp.

The members of this small family are of small size and are known as "pseudo click beetles". The adults are found on flowers but not much is known about the habits of the larvae.

53b. Legs vestigial or absent. Fig. 234. . . . . Family EUCNEMIDAE

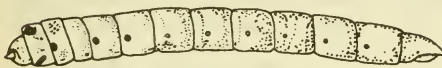


Fig. 234. *Melasis rufipennis* Horn.

Less than 100 species are known for North America. The larvae have the head parts enlarged and closely resemble the buprestid larvae. They

bore in wood usually that is just beginning to decay and are fairly common.

54a. Gular area well developed and quadrate.

Fig. 235. . . . . 55

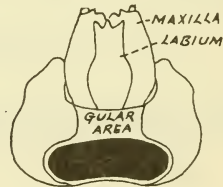


Fig. 235. Ventral aspect of head.

54b. Gular area small and indistinct, or represented only by a median gular suture. Fig. 236. . . . . Family ELATERIDAE



Fig. 236. A wireworm.

This family is a large one with about 8,000 known species. The larvae are called wireworms and are well known pests of farm and garden. They are mostly subterranean and phytophagous. Some are predacious upon white grubs and a number of species inhabit decaying wood and prey upon the xylophagous larvae.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 55a. Larva strongly sclerotized; dorsal and ventral prothoracic scleromes united into a solid cylinder; cervical membrane very large and eversible forming a balloon-shaped sack below the head when raised. Fig. 237. ....Family **CEBRIONIDAE**



Fig 237. *Cebrio antennatus* Schfr.

This small family is related to the wire worms. As for the United States our species are southern or western.

- 55b. Larva white and soft-skinned; dorsal and ventral prothoracic parts not forming a cylinder; cervical membrane not eversible. Fig. 238. ....Genus *Sandalus*, **RHIPICERIDAE**

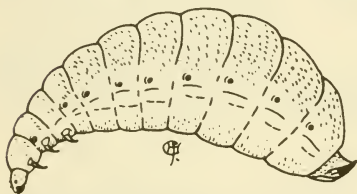


Fig. 238. *Sandalus niger* Knoch.

The information available regarding the habits of this genus is very limited. It is reported that a mature larva of *Sandalus niger* Knoch was taken from the nymph of a Cicada, having developed as a parasite.

- 56a. 9th abdominal segment with an unpaired pointed prolongation, or paired cerci; body with feather-like or spinose processes. Fig. 239. ....Group *Brachypsecti*, **DASCILLIDAE**

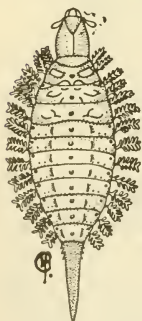


Fig. 239. *Brachypsectra fulva* Lec.

This group has but one known North American species.

This family of Soft-bodied Plant Beetles, has less than a thousand known species. The most frequent habitat is in proximity to water but only a comparatively small percentage of larvae and adults are aquatic as with the species here pictured.

- 56b. 9th abdominal segment without prolongation or cerci; body without conspicuous processes. ....57

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

57a. Epicranial halves meeting ventrally forming a transverse bridge. Fig. 240. ....Family CANTHARIDAE

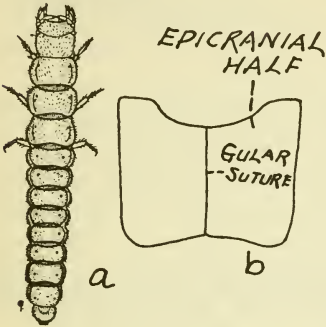


Fig. 240. a, *Cantharis* sp.; b, Ventral aspect of head (appendages omitted).

The family is composed of 1,300 described species. Their adults are commonly called soldier beetles. The eggs are deposited in masses in the soil. The newly hatched larvae of some species are feebly developed and are called "prolarvae". The larvae are primarily carnivorous and have a velvety appearance due to a covering of fine hairs. Pupation takes place in cells in the soil.

57b. Epicranial halves not meeting ventrally. ....58

58a. Frontal sutures present. Fig. 241. ....Family LAMPYRIDAE



Fig. 241. *Photinus* sp.

There are about 2,000 described species. The adults are known as fireflies and glowworms. The eggs, larvae and pupae are also sometimes luminous. The larvae are predacious and feed upon small animals including earthworms, snails, crustaceans and insects. They are subterranean but several Asiatic species are reported to be aquatic. Pupation usually takes place in a soil cell beneath rubbish or on the surface in moist situations.

58b. Frontal sutures absent. ....59

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

59a. Antenna 3-segmented with apical segment and a disk-shaped appendix; stipes and mentum separate; cardo present; galea 2-segmented. Fig. 242. . . . . Family PHENGODIDAE

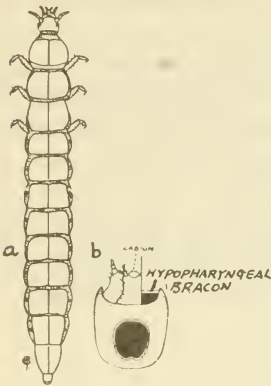


Fig. 242. a, *Phengodes* sp.; b, Ventral aspect of head.

It is reported that the species of *Phengodes* prey upon myriapods. Some larvae have light-producing organs, and are very attractive, sometimes displaying two or more colors of lights. The adult females of some species resemble the larvae.

59b. Antenna 1 or 2-segmented, distally covered with a large dome-shaped appendix; stipes and mentum fused; cardo vestigial or absent; galea 1-segmented. Fig. 243. . . . . Family LYCIDAE



Fig. 243. *Calopteron reticulatum* F.

They are similar to the lampyrids to which they are related. The adults fly by day, and are not luminous. Less than 100 species are known for North America.

60a. Frontal sutures present. . . . . 61

60b. Frontal sutures absent. . . . . 65

61a. Lacinia distally armed with 1 or more spurs.

Fig. 244. . . . . Family DERMESTIDAE

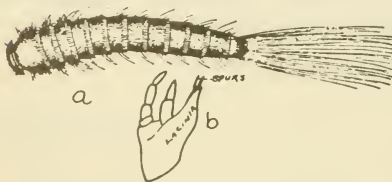


Fig. 244. a, Carpet beetle; b, Maxilla.

The family consists of about 550 described species. The larvae are covered with long or short hairs and feed upon dead animal and plant materials including skins, horn, hair, wool, tallow, cured meats, cheese, museum specimens and cereal products. Some very serious household pests belong to this family.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

61b. Lacinia without spurs. ....62

62a. Ventral mouth parts deeply retracted; cardo much smaller than stipes. Fig. 245. ....63



Fig. 245. Ventral aspect of the left half of head.

62b. Ventral mouth parts inserted in a rather shallow emargination of the front margin of the head; cardo at least as large as stipes. Fig. 246. ....Family CLERIDAE

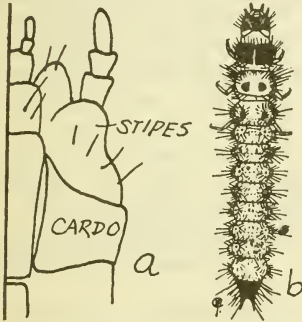


Fig. 246. a, Ventral half of the head; b, *Callimerus ar-cufer* Chapin.

This family consists of about 2,500 described species. The larvae are predacious and may be found in the soil, frequently in the nests of bees and wasps above ground, and also in the burrows of woodboring insects. The adults are known as checkered beetles and are attractively marked and colored.

63a. Mandible with a long, stiff prosthecal process near the middle or at the base of the inner margin; epicranial suture well developed. Fig. 247. ....Family MELYRIDAE

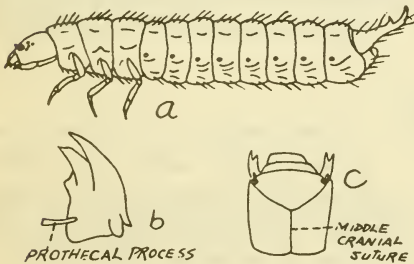


Fig. 247. a, *Collops nigriceps* Say; b, Mandible; c, Dorsal aspect of head.

At least some of the larvae of these soft winged flower beetles are predacious. Some species of adults are very common on green plants. Around 1,500 species have been described.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 63b Mandible with a short or no prothecal process; median epicranial suture usually not well developed, or entirely absent. . . . .64
- 64a. Antenna with the sensory appendix longer than the distal segment. Fig. 248. . . . .Family CISIDAE

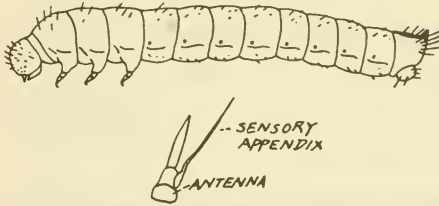


Fig. 248. *Ennearthron* sp.

This is a widely distributed family comprising probably over 300 species which are found in old wood or fungi. Some of the grubs eat paper and are known as "bookworms"; other species are pests where grain feed is stored.

- 64b. Antenna with the sensory appendix shorter than the distal segment or absent. Fig. 249. . . . .Family OSTOMIDAE



Fig. 249. *Airora cylindrica* Serv.

The well-known cadelle, *Tenebroides mauritanicus* L., feeds primarily upon grain and grain products, but sometimes also preys on other insects which live in the same medium. They are whitish grubs and noticeably flattened.

- 65a. Antenna without sensory appendix; ventral mouth parts apparently protracted. Fig. 250. . . . .Family CUCUJIDAE

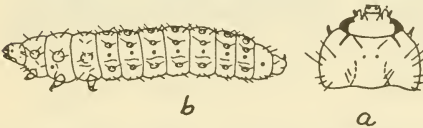


Fig. 250. a, Ventral aspect of head, showing the protracted mouth parts; b, *Scalidia linearis* Lec.

This family of flat bark beetles contains less than 1,000 known species but they are so variable that the family appears at several places in our key.

- 65b. Antenna with dilated sensory appendix; ventral mouth parts retracted. Fig. 251. . . . .Group Bothriderini, COLYDIIDAE

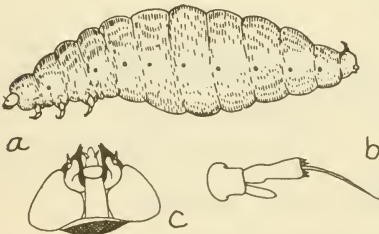


Fig. 251. a, *Deretaphrus oregonensis* Horn; b, Antenna; c, Ventral aspect of head, showing the retracted mouth parts.

Some species of this group are phytophagous, some are predacious upon wood boring insects, and a few are parasitic. Look for them on leaves or under the bark of trees.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 66a. Ventral mouth parts retracted. (See Fig. 251c). . . . . 67  
 66b. Ventral mouth parts protracted. (See Fig. 250).  
 Fig. 252. . . . . Family CERAMBYCIDAE



Fig. 252. Roundheaded apple tree borer, *Saperda candida* Fab.

The family is about sixth in size in the order and contains about 20,000 described species. Because of the large thorax the larvae are called roundheaded borers. The eggs are laid on or in the host plants and the female beetle sometimes girdles a limb so that the larvae may feed on the dying wood. The

larvae feed as borers on both living and dead plants, and are very destructive. Some of these larvae are known to live for many years.

- 67a. (a) The back of the mandible either with 2 long flagellate setae distally, and the body of the mandible partially fleshy or fully sclerotized; or (b) the back of the mandible without long setae distally, and the body of the mandible always fleshy, only with the base, or the tip and the base sclerotized.  
 Fig. 253. . . . . most LATHRIDIIDAE

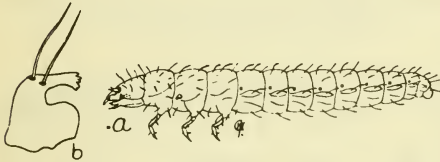


Fig. 253. a, *Cortodere costulata* Reit.; b, Mandible.

The members of this family number more than 700 species and are found in moss, decaying wood and fungi. A few have occurred in herbaria, dried carcasses and in ants' nests.

- 67b. The back of the mandible without long flagellate setae distally, and the body of the mandible completely sclerotized. . . . . 68

- 68a. Maxillary mala with distinguishable lacinia and galea. Fig. 254. . . . . 69



Fig. 254. Maxilla.

- 68b. Maxillary mala entire, sometimes bilobed anteriorly. Fig. 255. . . . . 71



Fig. 255. Maxilla.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

69a. 2nd antennal segment more than 4 times as long as the basal segment. Fig. 256. ....Family LATHRIDIIDAE



Fig. 256. Dorsal aspect of head.

These "minute brown scavenger beetles" are very small. Some are pests in drugs and other commercial products. Both larvae and adults are so small that they often escape detection.

69b. 2nd antennal segment subcylindrical, 3 times or less, as long as the basal segment. ....70

70a. Spiracles annular, not on tube; cerci not distinct. Fig. 257, ....Subfamily Eucinetinae, DASCILLIDAE

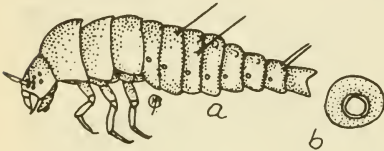


Fig. 257. a, *Eucinetus* sp.; b, A spiracle.

This subfamily contains only a few small beetles. Their larvae are not well known.

70b. Spiracles biforous, on tubes; cerci strong. Fig. 258. ....Family DERODONTIDAE

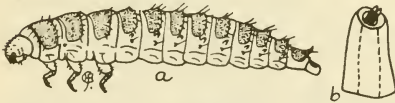


Fig. 258. a, *Derodontus maculetus* Meish; b, A spiracle on tube.

The members of this small family live in fungi. They are known as the "Tooth necked" fungus beetles.

71a. Mala falciform. Fig. 259. ....72



Fig. 259. Maxilla.

71b. Mala obtuse, or with inner margin irregularly toothed or notched. Fig. 260. ....78



Fig. 260. Maxilla.

# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

72a. Spiracles biforous. Fig. 261. ....73

The spiracles, openings along the sides of the thorax and abdomen of both immature and adult insects which function in respiration take various forms and numbers in different species.

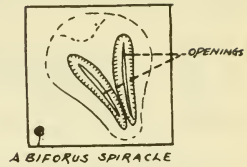


Fig. 261. A biforous spiracle.

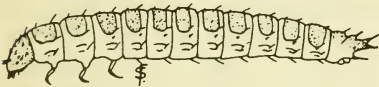
72b. Spiracles annular. Fig. 262. ....77



Fig. 262. An annular spiracle.

73a. Spiracles at least some borne on tubes; cerci terminating abruptly with 2 or 3 conical processes. (See Fig. 263). ....74

73b. Spiracles not at all on tubes; cerci terminally pointed and simple, or cerci absent. (See Fig. 265). ....75



74a. Labial palpus 1-segmented. Fig. 263. ..Family MONOTOMIDAE

Fig. 263. *Hesperobaenus* sp.

74b. Labial palpus 2-segmented.

Fig. 264. ....Family RHIZOPHAGIDAE

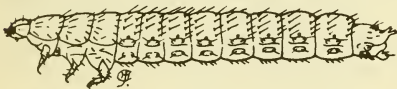


Fig. 264. *Rhizophagus grandis* Gyll.

Very little is known regarding the habits of the family. The larvae of *Rhizophagus* are predacious upon xylophagous insects. Less than 20 species are known for North America.

75a. Body cylindrical; mandible with 3 apical teeth.

Fig. 265. ....Subfamily Languriinae, EROTYLIDAE



Fig. 265. *Languria angustata* Beauv.

This subfamily does not contain many American species, but a few of them are rather important as plant pests. The larvae are slim whitish "worms" which bore in the stems of clover and other plants.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

75b. Bc.dy fusiform; mandible with 2 apical teeth. ....76



Fig. 266. a, *Pharaxonotha kirshi* Reit.; b, Mandible.

76a. Cutting edge of mandible behind the apical teeth with a single rounded projection; retinaculum short and broad.

Fig. 266. Subfamily Cladoxeninae, EROTYLIDAE

76b. Cutting edge of mandible behind the apical teeth multiserrate; retinaculum long and slender.

Fig. 267. ....Family CRYPTOPHAGIDAE

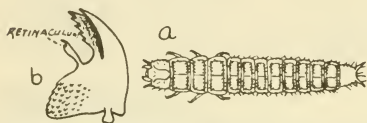


Fig. 267. a, *Cryptophagus saginatus* Sturm.; b, Mandible.

About 800 species are described. They are found on fungi and decaying organic matter. A few are found in the nests of ants and wasps where they are thought to be predators or scavengers.

77a. Cerci absent. Fig. 268. ....Group Silvanini, CUCUJIDAE



Fig. 268. Saw-toothed grain beetle, *Oryzaephilus surinamensis* (L.)

The genus *Silvanus* contains 55 known species. The larvae of some of the species are very destructive to stored grain products, dried fruit, etc. Their small size often permits them to get a good start before being detected.

77b. Cerci present. Fig. 269. ....Family CUCUJIDAE

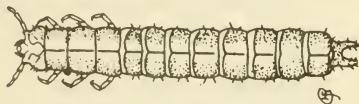


Fig. 269. *Cucujus clavipes* Fab.

This family consists of about 1,000 species. The development of many species takes place in grain and grain products. A few are predacious upon wood-boring insects and also on termites.

78a. Mentum with only apex free, or small, or indistinct by fusion with other areas (except in Sphindidae, mentum free to base and distinct, but appearing together with a mandible provided with retinaculum and a 9th abdominal segment without cerci). Fig. 270. ....79

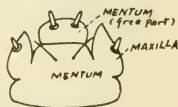


Fig. 270. Mentum and maxilla.

78b. Mentum with more than apex free, often free to base, always well developed and distinct. ....93

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

79a. Head swollen laterally, and much broader than thorax; cardo of normal shape and position; maxillary articulating area round and well developed; hypostomal inner margin concave between fossa for mandible and posterior end of cardo.

Fig. 271. . . . . Genera *Prostomis* and *Dryocora*, CUCUJIDAE

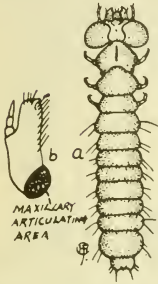


Fig. 271. a, *Prostomis mandibularis* Fab.; b, Maxilla.

*Prostomis mandibularis*, here figured is almost cosmopolitan in its distribution. The group is a relatively small one.

The family Cucujidae has about a thousand known species of rather widely diversified forms. Both the larvae and the adults are often serious pests of stored food products and as such have been distributed world wide. Many of the species live under the bark of trees, some being plant feeders and others feeding upon the small animal forms they find associated with them. The larvae are usually elongate and flattened.

79b. Different development of some, or all, of the 4 characters. . . . 80

80a. Maxillae appearing protracted in front of the mandibular articulations by a complete or partial elimination of the cardines.

Fig. 272. . . . . 81



Fig. 272. Ventral aspect of head.

80b. Maxillae deeply retracted. Fig. 273. . . . . 85



Fig. 273. Ventral aspect of head.

81a. Cerci present; terga without glandular openings. . . . . 82



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 81b. Cerci absent; terga with paired glandular openings.  
 Fig. 274. ....Family ORTHOPERIDAE

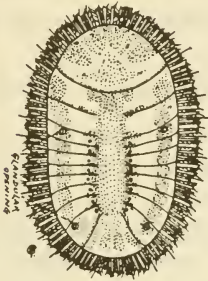


Fig. 274. *Corylophodes marginicollis* Lec.

These are the "fringe-winged fungus beetles". They are small but quite abundant. As the name indicates they live in fungi.

- 82a. 8th abdominal segment distinctly longer than 7th.  
 Fig. 275. ....Family CUCUJIDAE

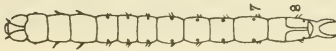


Fig. 275. *Laemophloeus biguttatus* Say.

The genus *Laemophloeus* contains more than 320 species which occur under bark and some are destructive to dried fruit and cereals.

- 82b. 8th abdominal segment about as long as seventh or shorter... 83  
 83a. Larvae parasitic, having a swollen abdomen, slightly sclerotized; head and body white.  
 Fig. 276. ....Genera *Scalidia* and *Catogenus*, CUCUJIDAE

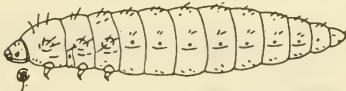


Fig. 276. *Scalidia linearis* Lec.

The species here pictured is found in our southern states. Only a few species of these two genera are known to America.

- 83b. Larvae not parasitic and abdomen not swollen; head and body normally sclerotized. .... 84  
 84a. Apical segment of labial palpus normal; hypostomal rods diverging posteriorly. Fig. 277. ....Family PHALACRIDAE

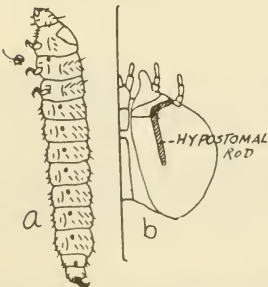


Fig. 277. a, *Phalacrus* sp.; b, Ventral aspect of a half head.

The larvae of *Olibrus* bore into stems and pupate underground. *Eustilbus apicalis* Melsh. is a predator upon the pea aphids. There are some 500 species of these "shining flower beetles".

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

84b. Apical segment of labial palpus minute; hypostomal rods parallel. Fig. 278. . . . .Subfamily Smicripinae, MONOTOMIDAE

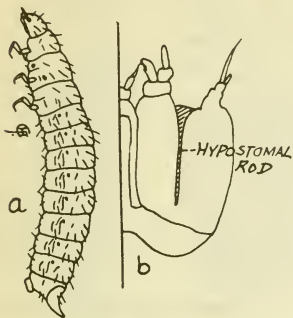


Fig. 278. a, *Smicrips palmicola* Lec.; b, Ventral aspect of a half head.

Only two species of this interesting subfamily are known for North America. They are southern in their range.

85a. Cardo (a) comparative small, narrow, often spindle-shaped and longitudinally directed; or (b) large, about as long or longer than stipes, triangular, and immovable, without posterior condyle.

Fig. 279. . . . .Family NITIDULIDAE



Fig. 279. a, *Glischrochilus obtusus* Say; b, Ventral aspect of head.

The family comprises some 2,500 species. The larvae are mostly saprophagous. They are found in fruit and garbage dumps, in cereals, under bark of dead trees, in galleries of woodboring beetles and in ants' nests. Several genera are predacious upon aphids and scale-insects. Pupation takes place in a cell in the soil.

85b. Cardo (a) moderate size, subtriangular, much shorter than stipes and obliquely directed; or (b) fused with stipes to a large, movable structure with a posterior condyle. . . . .86

86a. Mentum well developed and free to base.

Fig. 280. . . . .Family SPHINDIDAE

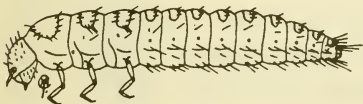


Fig. 280. *Sphindus americanus* Lec

Present day knowledge of this family is quite limited. The larvae are found under bark and in fungi. Only a few species are recorded for North America.

86b. Mentum not well developed, often fused with submentum, only free apically. Fig. 281. . . . .87

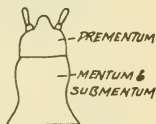


Fig. 281. Labium.

87a. Mandible with large, multituberculate or multicarinate molar structure; cardo proper distinct and subtriangular. Fig. 282. .... 88



Fig. 282.  
Mandible.

87b. Mandible not so. .... 89

88a. Body shape similar to a scale-insect; along the sides with flat projections carrying spinulose setae.

Fig. 283. .... Family MURMIDIIDAE

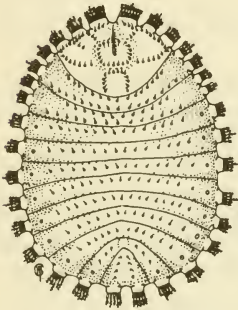


Fig. 283. *Murmidius ovalis* Beck.

The species here pictured is widely scattered in both hemispheres. Only a few other species are known for America.

88b. Body different. Fig. 284. .... Family ENDOMYCHIDAE

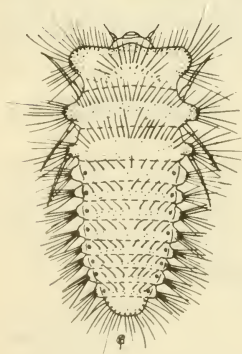


Fig. 284. *Rhymbus ulkei* Cr.

The family has about 950 known species. Their adults are commonly called fungus beetles. The larvae feed upon fungi, dead wood and vegetable refuse.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

89a. Mandible with reduced, smooth, and usually condyliform molar structure; distinct hypopharyngeal sclerome present.

Fig. 285. . . . . Subfamily Coccinellinae, COCCINELLIDAE

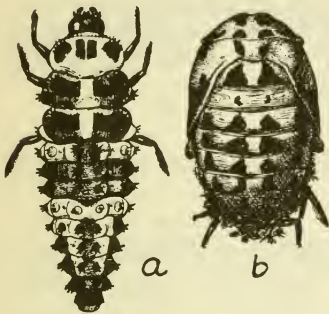


Fig. 285. Covergent lady beetle, *Hippodamia convergens* Guerin: a, pupa; b, larva. (U.S.D.A.)

The family is a fairly large one consisting of about 3,000 species. The adults are called ladybird beetles. Both the adults and the larvae have the same food habits. Among the few phytophagous species the genus *Ephilachna* are very serious pests of agricultural crops. Most of them are predacious and feed upon aphids, scale-insects, mites and other small insects. They have been utilized effectively in the biological control of crop pests. The larvae and adults may produce a kind of protective fluid from the joints of the legs.

89b. Mandible without molar structure; hypopharyngeal sclerome weak or absent. . . . . 90

90a. Body armed with many long, often branched, setiferous dorsal and lateral processes. . . . . 91

90b. Body without long setiferous dorsal and lateral processes. . . . 92

91a. 3 ocelli on each side, cerci absent.

Fig. 286. . . . . Subfamily Ephilachninae, COCCINELLIDAE

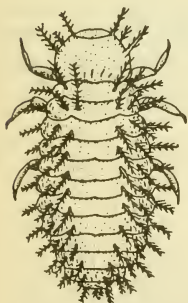


Fig. 286. Mexican bean beetle, *Ephilachna varivestris* Mulsant.

The "black sheep" of this otherwise quite helpful family fall in this subfamily. Larvae and adults unite to destroy as many bean, squash and similar plants as possible.

91b. 5 ocelli on each side; cerci well developed.

Fig. 287. ....Family EROTYLIDAE

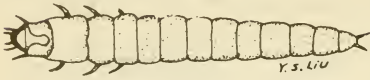


Fig. 287. Clover stem borer, *Lan-guria moxardi* Latr.

It has about 2,600 described species. The larvae live in the soil, in stems of plants and on fungi. Some species are fairly large and many of the adults are brightly colored.

92a. Mentum and submentum distinct.

Fig. 288. ....Group Dacnini, EROTYLIDAE

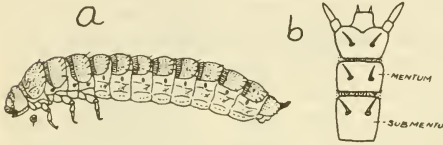


Fig. 288. a, *Penthe pimelia* Fab.; b, Labium.

The larvae have been found in herbaceous plants. They live in decaying wood and are of little importance economically.

92b. Mentum and submentum fused.

Fig. 289. ....Family MELANDRYIDAE



Fig. 289. a, *Melandrya striata* Say; b, Labium.

They occur in dry wood and fungi or sometimes under bark. The larvae are slender and cylindrical and may often be found with the adults.

93a. Body terminating in a deciduous ovate appendix.

Fig. 290. ....Group Scaptini, MELANDRYIDAE



Fig. 290. *Scaptia sericea* Melsh.

The species of *Scaptia* occur in rotten wood, fungi, etc. This is a small group with but two genera and only a few species in America.

93b. Not so. ....94

94a. Mandible with a tail-like, hairy appendix or a fleshy, hairy lobe behind the base of mola.

Fig. 291. ....95



Fig. 291. Two mandibles.

94b. Mandible not so. ....96



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

95a. 3 large and 2 or 3 small ocelli on each side of head; appendix of mandible tail-shaped.

Fig. 292. ....Subfamily Byturinae, DERMESTIDAE

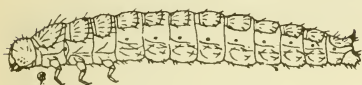


Fig. 292. *Byturus unicolor* Say.

It includes a single genus *Byturus* with few species. Both adults and larvae are injurious to raspberries.

95b. 1 ocellus on each side of head; appendix of mandible lobe-like.

Fig. 293. ....Family ANTHICIDAE



Fig. 293. *Anthicus heroicus* Csy.

Well over 1,000 species of these rather small beetles have been described. They are widely scattered and often very numerous.

96a. Abdominal spiracles located in disk-like sclerites.

Fig. 294. ....Family EURYSTETHIDAE

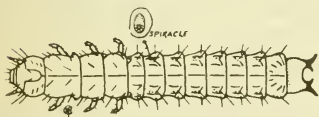


Fig. 294. *Eurystethus californicus* Melsh.

Only a few species are recorded in America for this family. All of them are on the west coast.

96b. Abdominal spiracles not located in disk-like sclerites. ....97

97a. Mandible without molar structure; larvae parasitic with swollen abdomen. Fig. 295. ....Group Bothriderini, COLYDIIDAE

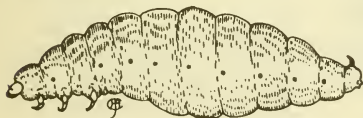


Fig. 295. *Derataphrus oregonensis* Horn.

The larvae of several species of *Bothrideres* have been noted to be ectoparasites or predators of other coleopterous larvae.

97b. Mandible with molar structure.

Fig. 296. ....98



Fig. 296. Mandible.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

98a. Body elongate, cylindrical or subcylindrical, or more fusiform.. 99

98b. Body elongate and strongly depressed with parallel sides. .... 107

99a. Cardo simple. Fig. 297. .... 100



Fig. 297.  
Maxilla.

99b. Cardo divided into 2 parts. Fig. 298. .... 102



Fig. 298.  
Maxilla.

100a. Mandible symmetrical. Fig. 299. .... Family COLYDIIDAE



Fig. 299. *Aulonium tuberculatum*  
Lec.

Some species are known to feed upon decaying vegetable matter, a number of them are predacious upon larvae or pupae of several Cerambycidae.

100b. Mandible asymmetrical. .... 101

101a. Mola of mandible depressed, with a grinding surface on the ventral or dorsal side or both.  
Fig. 300. .... Family MYCETOPHAGIDAE

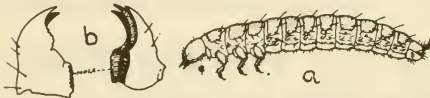


Fig. 300. a, *Mycetophagus punctatus* Say;  
b, Mandible.

The members of this family chiefly live in rotting wood or under bark, associated with fungi. The larvae of *Berginus maindroni* Grouv. are reported to feed upon lac and the lac insects in India.

101b. Mola not depressed. .... 111

102a. Cerci present. .... 103

102b. Cerci absent. .... Subfamily Oedemerinae, OEDEMERIDAE

Most of the members of this interesting family fall here. They are small to medium size. The known larvae live largely in decaying wood.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

103a. Ambulatorial warts present ventrally on 2nd to 5th abdominal segments. Fig. 301.....Subfamily Calopodinae, OEDMERIDAE



Fig. 301. *Calopus angustus* Lec.

The larvae have been found in old wood or under bark. It is a very small subfamily.

103b. Ambulatorial warts absent. ....104

104a. 9th abdominal venter simple, without conical points. ....105

104b. 9th abdominal venter with a conical point on each side. Fig. 302. ....103

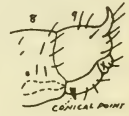


Fig. 302. 8th and 9th abdominal segments.

105a. Submentum and galea fused and heavily sclerotized. Fig. 303. ....Family CEPHALOIDAE

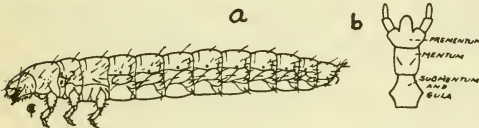


Fig. 303. a, *Cephaloon lepturides* Newn.; b, Labium.

Only a few genera and not many species are known for this small family. They are mostly western species.

105b. Submentum and galea fleshy. Fig. 304. ....Group Nosodermini, TENEBRIONIDAE



Fig. 304. *Phellopsis obcordata* Kby.

This is a small group of mostly western beetles although the species pictured is found in the East.

106a. Cerci simple, corniform and curved upward. Fig. 305. ....Group Sychroini, MELANDRYIDAE

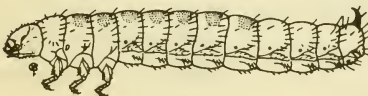


Fig. 305. *Synchrona punctata* Nwn.

The one North American species of this group is here pictured. The adult is brown and of medium size. Both adults and larvae live under dead bark of trees.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

106b. Cerci with a branch at base. Fig. 306. . . . . Family PEDILIDAE

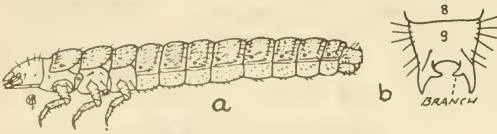


Fig. 306. a, *Eurygenius campanulatus* Lec.; b, 9th abdominal segment with cerci.

This is a small family of some 50 North American species. The one pictured is western. Members of the genus *Pedilus* are more frequent.

107a. Venter of 9th abdominal segment with transverse row of asperities, or small plates.  
Fig. 307. . . . . 108

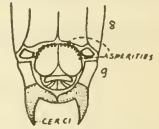


Fig. 307. Ventral aspect of 8th and 9th abdominal segments.

107b. Venter of 9th abdominal segment not so armed.  
Fig. 308. . . . . Family PYTHIDAE

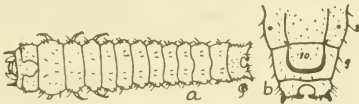


Fig. 308. a, *Rhinosimus ruficollis* L.; b, Ventral aspect of 8th and 9th abdominal segments.

This little family of bark beetles boasts less than 25 North American species. Adults and larvae are found under bark of pine trees and occasionally other species.

108a. 8th abdominal segment at least twice as long as 9th, cerci excluded; a pair of pits in margin between cerci.  
(See Figs. 309 and 310). . . . . 109

108b. 8th and 9th abdominal segments subequal, cerci excluded; a single pit present in margin between cerci.  
(See Figs. 311 and 312). . . . . 110

109a. 9th abdominal venter bearing asperities arranged in a continuous arch. Fig. 309. . . . . Family PYROCHROIDAE

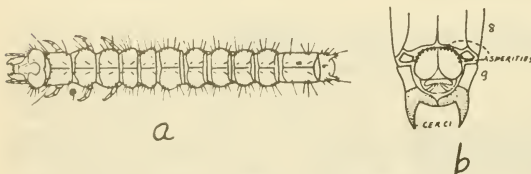


Fig. 309. *Neopyrochroa femoralis* Lec.; b, Ventral aspect of 8th and 9th abdominal segments.

The larvae are found under bark or in wood. Adults have areas of brilliant yellow or red and are known as "fire-colored beetles".

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

109b. 9th abdominal venter bearing small plates in place of asperities. Fig. 310. .... Genus *Boros*, TENEBRIONIDAE

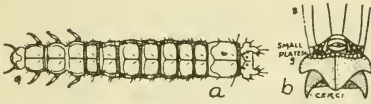


Fig. 310. a, *Boros unicolor* Say; b, Ventral aspect of 8th and 9th abdominal segments.

The species pictured is a medium sized beetle, both adults and larvae being found under bark of dead pine trees. Some systematists wish to make a new family Boridae.

110a. 9th abdominal segment dorsally with a continuous row of small dark tubercles on the cerci and on the space between them. Fig. 311. .... Family PYTHIDAE



Fig. 311. a, *Pytho niger* Kby.; b, Dorsal aspect of 9th abdominal segment with cerci.

Look under bark for all stages of these small beetles. The species pictured ranges from Labrador through the New England states.

110b. 9th abdominal segment only with 2 small tubercles proximally on dorsal side of each cercus. Fig. 312. .... Family OTHNIIDAE



Fig. 312. *Othnius umbrosus* Lec.

The species pictured is found in the Middle West. This small family has only this one genus and but a few species.

111a. Antenna contiguous to mouth frame. Fig. 313. .... 112



Fig. 313. Dorsal aspect of head.

111b. Antenna inserted some distance in from mouth frame. Fig. 314. .... 113

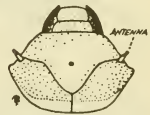


Fig. 314. Dorsal aspect of head.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 112a. Back of mandible opposite the cutting edge with sharp margin; opposite the mola, excavate and without a spinose setose elevation. Fig. 315. . . . . Family ALLECULIDAE

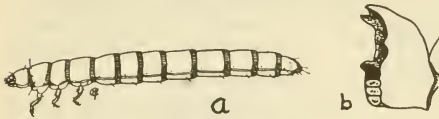


Fig. 315. a, *Capnochroa fuliginosa* Melsh; b, Mandible.

These are the "comb-clawed bark beetles". They are closely related to the tenebrionids. The larvae look like wireworms and live in rotten wood

- 112b. Back of mandible not as described above. Fig. 316. . . . . Family TENEBRIONIDAE



Fig. 316. *Alobates pennsylvanica* DeGeer.

One of the largest family of Coleoptera comprising more than 10,000 species. The larvae bear a close resemblance to those of the Elateridae, but the labrum is distinct. The majority of the species are scavengers, some feed upon grain or grain products and a few are found in association with bark and wood borers. The well-known mealworm, *Tenebrio molitor* L., and the confused flour beetle, *Tribolium confusum* Duval, are pests in mills and storehouses.

- 113a. Molar part of mandible with the grinding surface transversely multicarinate; antenna short and 2-segmented.

- Fig. 317. . . . . Family NILIONIDAE

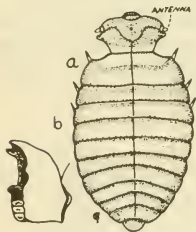


Fig. 317. a, *Leiochrodes* sp.; b, Mandible.

The members of this exotic family are found in South America.

- 113b. Molar part of mandible with the grinding surface either smooth, or bearing obtuse tubercles; antenna elongate and 2 or 3-segmented, distal segment minute or absent. Fig. 318. . . . . Family LAGRIIDAE



Fig. 318. a, *Lagria* sp.; b, Mandible.

This is still another family of bark beetles. The larva often feed on leaves. They are elongate and cylindrical.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

114a. 9 complete abdominal segments; 10th small.  
 (See Fig. 319). . . . . 115

114b. 8 complete abdominal segments; 9th and 10th reduced.  
 (See Fig. 321). . . . . 116

115a. No ocelli or but 1; cardo fused with stipes; coxae small and widely separated. Fig. 319. . . . . Family HISTERIDAE



Fig. 319. a, *Hololepta yucateca* Mars.; b, Maxilla.

This family consists of about 3,000 known species. Many of the larvae are predacious upon coleopterous and dipterous larvae and a few species attack immature stages of Chrysomelidae and Lepidoptera. A number of them are myrmecophilous in habitat.

115b. 6 ocelli; cardo distinct; coxae large, approximate.

Fig. 320. Subfamily Helophorinae, HYDROPHILIDAE

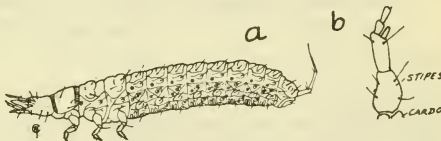


Fig. 320. a, *Helophorus aquaticus* L. (Redrawn from Boving & Craighead); b, Maxilla.

116a. Head elevated; antenna inserted farther from the lateral margin of the head than is the mandible.

Fig. 321 . . . . . Family HYDROPHILIDAE



Fig. 321. a, *Chaetartria seminulum* Herbst. (Redrawn from Boving & Craighead); b, Dorsal aspect of a half head.

This family comprises about 1,700 species. The eggs of several genera are enclosed in silken cases and attached to grass or floating objects, but *Helochaeres* and *Spercheus* fasten them on their own bodies. The

larvae are chiefly vegetable scavengers, but a few species are predacious. The majority of species are aquatic or semiaquatic, but a number of the subfamily Sphaeridiinae are known to be terrestrial.

116b. Head slightly inclined; antenna inserted near the lateral margin of the head than is the mandible. . . . . 117

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 117a. Abdominal segments soft, with short conical gills; last 3 abdominal segments attenuate, not forming a breathing pocket. Fig. 322. . . . . Subfamily Spercheinae, HYDROPHILIDAE



Fig. 322. *Spercheus emarginatus* Schall. (Redrawn from Boving & Craighead)

The hydrophilids include many species of rather widely diversified forms and habits. The species of this subfamily are exotic.

- 117b. Abdominal segments with well developed plates; last 3 abdominal segments forming a breathing pocket. Fig. 323. . . . . Subfamily Hydrochinae, HYDROPHILIDAE

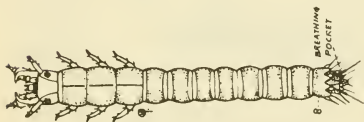


Fig. 323. *Hydrochus squamifer* Lec.

The members of this subfamily are small and in consequence frequently overlooked. The species pictured is known from the Great Lakes area.

- 118a. Hypopharyngeal sclerome absent; mandible without a real molar structure. . . . . 119

- 118b. Hypopharyngeal sclerome present; mandible with a definite molar structure. Fig. 324. . . . . 142

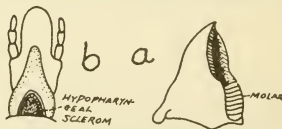


Fig. 324. a, Mandible; b, Dorsal aspect of labium

- 119a. 9th abdominal tergum armed with a pair of cerci or an unpaired spine. Fig. 325. . . . . Family MORDELLIDAE



Fig. 325. *Tomoxia bidentata* Say.

There are about 800 known species. Some larvae are found in termite nests and the burrows of stem and wood-boring insects. They are possibly predacious, but that has been questioned.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 119b. 9th abdominal tergum without a pair of cerci and without an unpaired spine. ....120
- 120a. 10th abdominal segment in front of anus provided with a pair of cushioned and adjacent lobes separated by a median, longitudinal groove often marked at the anterior end by a small transverse sclerome. (See Figs. 326 and 330). ....121
- 120b. 10th abdominal segment in front of anus without a pair of soft, oval lobes separated by a longitudinal groove. ....125  
(See Fig. 333).
- 121a. Head protracted; mandible dentate. ....122
- 121b. Head retracted; mandible not dentate. ....123
- 122a. Thoracic spiracle pushed forward to the anterior margin of prothorax. Fig. 326. ....Family PTINIDAE

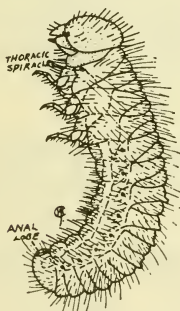


Fig. 326. *Niptus* sp.

About 550 species have been described. The larvae are scarabaeoid form and feed upon dead and dried animal and vegetable matter. The storehouse beetle, *Gibbium psyllodes* (Czempinski), is a most destructive species to stored products. Several species are reported as inguines in ants' nests.

- 122b. Thoracic spiracle not reaching anterior margin of prothorax. Fig. 327. ....Family ANOBIIDAE



Fig. 327. *Nevermannia dorcatomoides* Fisher. (Redrawn from Boving & Craighead)

There are around 1,200 described species. The larvae are scarabaeoid form, very small, and living in dead and usually well-seasoned hard woods. Many feed on animal and plant products. The furniture beetle, *Anobium striatum* Olivier, the cigarette beetle, *Lasioderma serricorne* (Fab.) and the drugstore beetle, *Stegobium paniceum* (L.) are serious pests.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

123a. Mandible without a dorsal, molar-like process; epipharynx without a large sclerome; lacinia mandibulae absent.

Fig. 328. . . . . Family BOSTRICHIDAE



Fig. 328. Lead cable borer, *Scobicia declivis* (Lec.)

There are about 400 known species. They are known as branch and limb borers. The larvae are scarabaeoid in form, feed in dead wood and may be injurious to furniture and building materials. The very interesting lead cable borer, or short-circuit beetle, *Scobicia declivis* (Lec.) here shown, bores holes into the aerial lead telephone cables causing the linemen frequent trouble.

123b. Mandible with a dorsal, molar-like process, grinding against a large sclerome in epipharynx; lacinia mandibulae present and fleshy. Fig. 329. . . . . 124

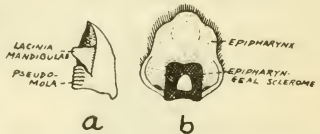


Fig. 329. a, Mandible; b, Epipharynx.

124a. Abdominal spiracles subequal in size.

Group Psoini, LYCTIDAE

This small group lives in our western states.

124b. Last abdominal spiracle much larger than the others.

Fig. 330. . . . . Family LYCTIDAE

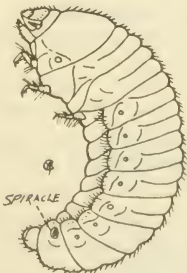


Fig. 330. *Lyctus cavicollis* Lec.

The family consists of 60 species and the adults are known as the powder post beetles. Their larvae scarabaeoid in form with 3-segmented legs, live in dead wood and are particularly destructive to furniture.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

125a. Hypopharyngeal bracon absent; usually with segmented legs. ....126

125b. Hypopharyngeal bracon present; usually without segmented legs. Fig. 331. ....136

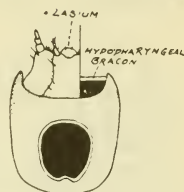


Fig. 331. Ventral aspect of head, showing the hypopharyngeal bracon.

126a. Mandible simple, distally either with a broad transverse gouge-like cutting edge, or with a simple apex. ....127

126b. Mandible dentate, distally with from 2 to 5 teeth. Fig. 332. ....129



Fig. 332. Mandible.

127a. Prementum and mentum fused, bearing a common median escutcheon-like sclerome with a pair of light, circular areas anteriorly. Fig. 333. ....Family BRUCIDAE

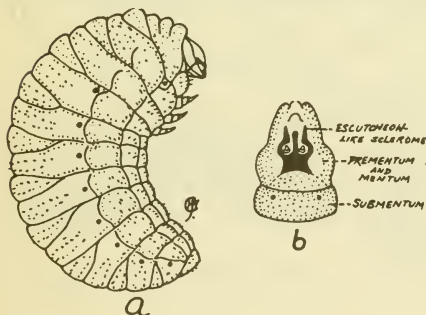


Fig. 333. a, Pea weevil, *Bruchus pisorum* (L.); b, Labium.

The members of this family number no less than 900 species and they are frequently known as pea and bean "weevils". Their larvae undergo a hypermetamorphosis in which the first instar is more or less carabiform with well-developed legs. The first molt occurs in the host and the body becomes eruciform and mostly apodous and blind. No less than 50 species are of economic importance.

127b. Prementum and mentum distinct, without escutcheon-like sclerome. ....128

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

128a. Legs present and fully developed; body curved and plump.

Fig. 334. . . . . Subfamily Sagrinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE



Fig. 334. *Sagra femorata* Jac.

The members of this small subfamily are the most primitive of all the leaf beetles.

128b. Legs absent; body straight.

Fig. 335. . . . . Subfamily Orsodacninae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE

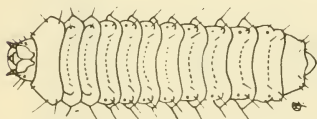


Fig. 335. *Zeugophora scutellaris* Suffr.

The adults feed on spring buds and are highly variable.

129a. Spiracles on 8th abdominal segment biforous, terminal, and projecting like a pair of spurs.

Fig. 336. . . . . Subfamily Donaciinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE



Fig. 336. *Donacia* sp.

The larvae are aquatic and feed on the roots or in the stems of aquatic plants. The pupae are enclosed in tough cocoons attached to roots of the host plants.

129b. Spiracles of 8th abdominal segment not projecting like spurs. . 130

\* The family Chrysomelidae is such a large one that some Coleopterists have proposed splitting it up into a number of families. We have chosen to follow Leng and give these ten groups subfamily significance.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 130a. Labrum small, or indistinct and fused with front and clypeus.  
 Fig. 337. ....Subfamily Clytrinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE

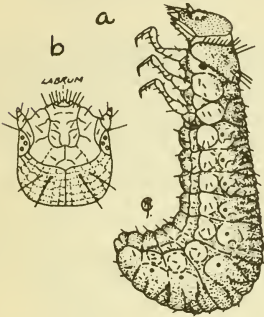


Fig. 337. a, *Clytra quadripunctata* L. (Redrawn from Boving & Craighead); b, Dorsal aspect of head.

The genus pictured is confined to the Eastern Hemisphere. It is represented in North America by the genus *Antipus*.

- 130b. Labrum well developed and free. ....131

- 131a. Maxillary palpus 3 or 4-segmented (excluding palpifer); 8th abdominal spiracles present and laterally placed; 9th abdominal segment terminal. Fig. 338. ....132



Fig. 338. Maxilla.

- 131b. Maxillary palpus 2-segmented or less; 8th abdominal spiracles if present, thus dorsally placed, or absent; 8th abdominal segment terminal with free hind margin. ....135

- 132a. Tarsus long, slender, without pulvillus; mandible compressed, with 2 to 3 distal teeth.  
 Fig. 339. ....Subfamily Eumolpinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE

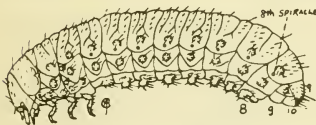


Fig. 339. *Chrysochūs auratus* Fab.

This is a large and important subfamily. Its members are widely distributed and often highly economic.

- 132b. Tarsus of moderate length, curved, and usually with pulvillus; mandible palmate with 4 to 5 distal teeth.  
 Fig. 340. ....133

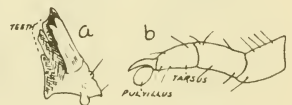


Fig. 340. a, Mandible; b, Leg.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

133a. More than 1 ocellus on each side of head, usually 5 or 6 ocelli, antenna 3-segmented. . . . . 134

133b. 1 ocellus on each side, or none; antenna 2-segmented or less.  
 Fig. 341. . . . . Subfamily Galerucinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE

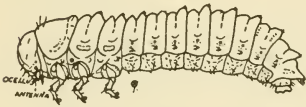


Fig. 341. Larger elm leaf beetle, *Monocesta coryli* (Say).

Their larval habits are varied, many feed openly on the parenchyma of leaves, others live in roots, and a number are leaf-miners. It is a large and important subfamily.

134a. First 8 abdominal segments with ambulatory warts on ventral region; anal opening dorsal; labial palpus 1-segmented.

Fig. 342. . . . . Subfamily Criocerinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE

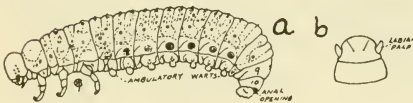


Fig. 342. Asparagus beetle, *Crioceris asperogi* (L.); b, Labium.

Their larvae are fleshy grubs which feed externally on the leaves. Some have the habit of concealing themselves with coverings of excrement. The asparagus beetle, *Crioceris asparagi* (L.) is familiar to growers of asparagus.

134b. First 8 abdominal segments without any ambulatory warts; anal opening ventral and placed in the middle of the sucking disk of the 10th abdominal segment; labial palpus 2-segmented.

Fig. 343. . . . . Subfamily Chrysomelinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE

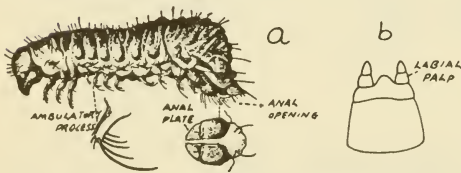


Fig. 343. a, *Myochrous denticolli* Say; b, Labium.

This family Chrysomelidae is one of the four largest of the order, comprising more than 25,000 species. The larvae feed on leaves, roots, or live in stems, in galls, in leaf mines, in ants' nests and some are aquatic species. They are most destructive insects to agricultural crops. This subfamily contains some common and very interesting species.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 135a. 8th abdominal segment terminal, with free hind margin; 8th pair of abdominal spiracles well developed and dorsal.  
 Fig. 344. ....Subfamily Hispinæ\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE

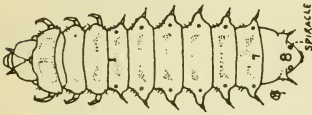


Fig. 344. *Chalepus ater*  
Weis.

The adults are usually wedge-shaped with engraved elytra. The larvae often feed on the surface of leaves or are leaf-miners. They often conceal themselves with a covering of excrement.

- 135b. Tergum of 8th abdominal segment often provided with an upright fork bearing the cast skins or the excrement of the larva; 8th pair of abdominal spiracles vestigial.  
 Fig. 345. ....Subfamily Cassidinae\*, CHRYSOMELIDAE



Fig. 345. *Cassida nebulosa* L.

It includes the tortoise beetles. In certain species the eggs are enclosed in an ootheca. The larvae often cover their bodies with excrement or cast skin for protection and are an odd-looking lot.

- 136a. Legs present, but small, and usually 2-segmented.  
 Fig. 346. ....Family BRENTIDAE

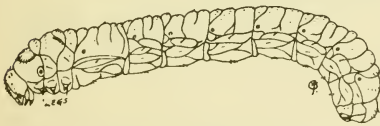


Fig. 346. *Eupsalis minuta* Drury.

Around 1,000 species have been described. The immature stages are passed in wood. The rostrum of the female is used for boring holes in which the eggs are laid. The larvae are elongate and slender and provided with thoracic legs.

- 136b. Legs absent, pedal lobes occupying their place. ....137

- 137a. Head capsule elongate, broadening posteriorly, and with straight sides. Fig. 347. ....Family PROTERHINIDAE

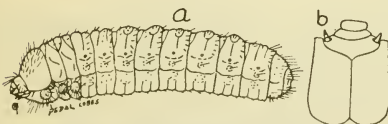


Fig. 347. a, *Protherhinus anthracis* Perkins; b, Dorsal aspect of head.

This is a very small family consisting of 2 genera. *Aglycyderes* occurs in the Canary Islands and New Zealand and *Protherhinus* inhabits the Hawaiian and other Pacific Islands.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 137b. Head capsule narrowing posteriorly and with curved sides...138
- 138a. Abdominal hypopleuron subdivided into at least 2 lobes.  
(See Fig. 352). . . . .141
- 138b. Abdominal hypopleuron not subdivided. . . . .139
- 139a. Abdominal segments with no more than 2 transverse dorsal plicae. (See Fig. 350). . . . .140
- 139b. Abdominal segments with 3 or 4 transverse dorsal plicae.  
Fig. 348 and 349. . . Families CURCULIONIDAE and SCOLYTIDAE

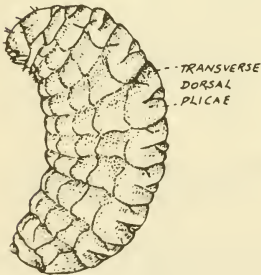


Fig. 348. *Tychius picrostris* (Fab.) (Curculionidae)

These two families are not separable by larval characters. The Curculionidae is probably the largest family of insects, it includes about 40,000 known species.



Fig. 349. Shot-hole borer, *Scolytus rugulosus* (Ratz.) (Scolytidae)

The larvae feed on roots, fruits, leaves, seeds and also live as borers and leaf miners. No truly aquatic forms are known although the larvae of many species live in the roots of plants growing in bogs and marshes. The female usually uses her snout to make a hole in the plant tissue into which the eggs are thrust.

The Scolytidae is also a large family comprising about 2,000 known species. The adults are called bark beetles or engraver beetles. Their larvae live in galleries in dead or healthy shrubs and trees. They attack all parts of the plants. In the United States alone the annual losses in destruction of timber has been estimated at about \$100,000,000.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

140a. More than 2 ocelli on each side; head retracted.

Fig. 350. . . . . Subfamily Rhynchitinae, CURCULIONIDAE



Fig. 350. *Rhynchites aeneus*  
Boh.

The larvae of *Rhynchites* and *Attelabus* live in tunnels formed of rolled leaves constructed by the adults.

The larvae of the species pictured live in *Helianthus*. *R. bicolor*, a very common species, develops within the hips of wild and cultivated roses.

140b. 1 ocellus on each side; head protracted.

Fig. 351. . . . . Subfamily Apioninae, CURCULIONIDAE



Fig. 351. Pine gall weevil, *Podapion gallicola* Riley.

This small subfamily is cosmopolitan in its distribution. The species here pictured makes galls on the scrub pine. The larvae of *Apion*, a rather large genus, live principally within the seeds of legumes and other plants. Some are gall makers.

141a. Maxillary palpus 2-segmented.

Fig. 352. . . . . Subfamily Calendrinae, CURCULIONIDAE

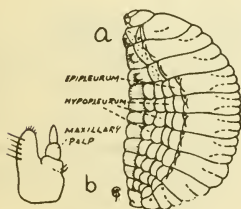


Fig. 352. a, Granary weevil, *Sitophilus granarius* (L.);  
b, Maxilla.

Many of our most destructive "bill-bug" larvae belong here. The larvae of the larger species bore into the stems of plants, principally corn and grasses while the smaller ones give their attention to seeds and grain.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

141b. Maxillary palpus 1-segmented. Fig. 353. Family PLATYPODIDAE

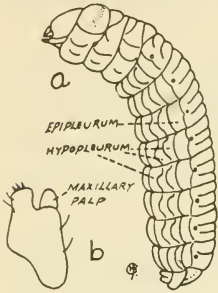


Fig. 353. a, *Platypus compositus* Say; b, Maxilla.

The eggs are laid in the primary galleries which are made by the adults. The larvae then make new tunnels. Often the burrows form definite patterns which are characteristic of the species. The ambrosia beetles live in dead wood and cultivate fungi to feed their young.

142a. Legs vestigial, without pointed tarsal segment, or absent; body curved, fleshy, and with dorsal transverse plicae; 10th abdominal segment small, in continuation of 9th.

Fig. 354. . . . . Family PLATYSTOMIDAE

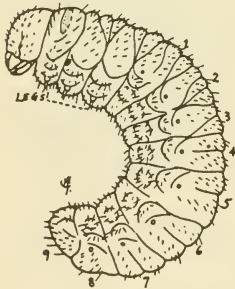


Fig. 354. *Euparius marmorius* Oliv.

Certain species of *Brachytarsus* are predacious upon scale-insects. The larvae of *B. niveovariegatus* Roel. attack the Chinese wax scale, *Ericerus pela* Chev.

142b. Legs normal, with strong tarsus; body elongate, cylindrical, covered with tergal shields; 10th abdominal segment well developed, asperate, and placed below base of large 9th segment.

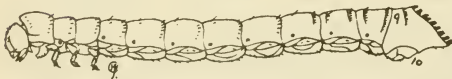


Fig. 355. Chestnut timberworm, *Melittomma sericeum* (Harris).

Fig. 355. . . . . Family LYMEXYLIDAE

ORDER HEMIPTERA

- 1a. Aquatic or semi-aquatic. . . . . 2
- 1b. Terrestrial. . . . . 10
- 2a. Antennae shorter than head, usually concealed. . . . . 3
- 2b. Antennae as long or longer than head, exposed. . . . . 8
- 3a. Bugs that live within water. . . . . 4
- 3b. Bugs that live on or near water. . . . . 7
- 4a. Hind legs with 2 distinct claws. . . . . 6
- 4b. Hind leg without distinct claws. . . . . 5
- 5a. Back swimmers; fore tarsi with 2 claws.  
 Fig. 356. . . . . Family NOTONECTIDAE



Fig. 356. *Notonecta undulata* Say, 3rd instar.

The family is composed of more than 200 species. They are known as back swimmers because they swim on their back with oar-like hind legs. They are common around edges of fresh water ponds, lakes and streams. They feed upon small animals. Eggs are laid on or in the tissues of aquatic plants.

- 5b. Fore tarsi flattened, without claws. Fig. 357. . . . . Family CORIXIDAE

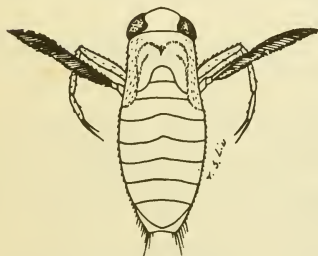


Fig. 357. *Arctocorixa alternata* Say, 5th instar.

About 300 species have been described. The common name is water boatman. They live in fresh and brackish water. Eggs are laid on aquatic plants and other objects. Their food consists of all kinds of organic ooze.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 6a. Tarsi 2-segmented; apical appendages of abdomen short and flat.  
 Fig. 358. ....Family **BELOSTOMATIDAE**

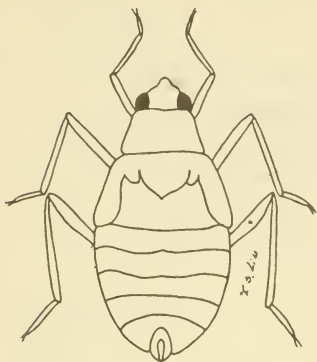


Fig. 358. *Belostoma flumineum*  
 Say, 5th instar.

The family consists of about 150 described species. They are commonly called giant water bugs or electric light bugs. The fore legs are short and raptorial; the middle and hind legs are for swimming. They live in fresh water where they feed on small aquatic animals.

- 6b. Tarsi 1-segmented; apical appendages of abdomen long and slender. Fig. 359. ....Family **NEPIDAE**



Fig. 359. Water scorpion, *Ranatra fusca* Palisot-Beauvois.

About 200 species have been described. They are called water scorpions. The fore legs are raptorial, the middle and hind legs are long and linear. They swim slowly, often crawling on objects in the water. They are predacious and usually awaiting for prey. They come to the surface for air and often hide under stones near water.

- 7a. Body toad-shaped; fore legs raptorial.  
 Fig. 360. ....Family **GELASTOCORIDAE**



Fig. 360. Cephalic view of a toad bug, *Gelastocoris oculatus* (Fabr.)

They resemble toads both in shape and in method of crawling and hopping, which facts have given the name "toad bugs". About 60 species have been described.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

7b. Body not toad-shaped; fore legs similar to middle legs.

..... Family OCHTERIDAE

These are shore-inhabiting bugs. The family includes only a single genus, *Ochterus* and only three species have been described in the United States. They are all predacious.

8a. Head as long as entire thorax. Fig. 361. Family HYDROMETRIDAE

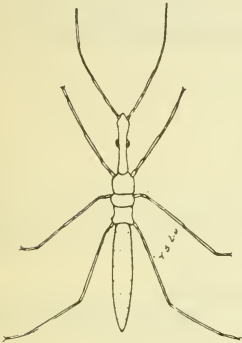


Fig. 361. *Hydrometra martini* Kirk, 4th instar.

The members of this family are called water-measurers because they creep slowly upon the water surface. The body is very slender and the head is as long as the entire thorax. Only three species have been described in the United States.

8b. Head shorter than thorax. .... 9

9a. Beak 4-segmented; hind femur extending much beyond the apex of abdomen. Fig. 362. .... Family GERRIDAE

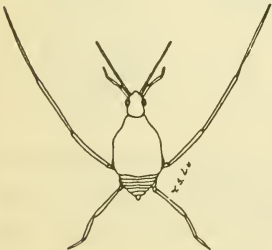


Fig. 362. *Gerris remigis* Say, 1st instar.

The water-striders skim rapidly over the water surface and often congregate in large numbers. They are predacious and feed upon insects that fall into the water or they sometimes jump to capture their preys. Only about 20 species have been described in the United States as belonging to the genus *Gerris*. A few live on salt water and are truly marine.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 9b. Beak 3-segmented; hind femur not extending much beyond the apex of abdomen. Fig. 363. . . . . Family VELIIDAE

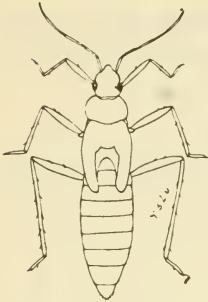


Fig. 363. *Mesovelius mulsanti* White.

The broad-shouldered water-striders are closely allied to the Gerridae. The distal segment of the tarsi, at least of the fore leg is bifid and the claws are inserted before the apex. They are predacious and live on the water surface. About 20 species have been described in the United States.

- 10a. Beak 3-segmented. . . . . 11  
 10b. Beak 4-segmented. . . . . 13  
 11a. Body broad and flat, without wing pads; parasitic.  
 Fig. 364. . . . . Family CIMICIDAE

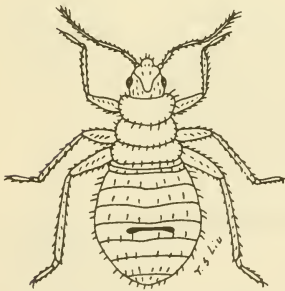


Fig. 364. Bed bug *Cimex lectularius* L., newly hatched.

These are bedbugs and swallow bugs, about 36 described species. Among them, 2 species attack humans: the bedbug, *Cimex lectularius* L. in temperate and subtropical regions; *Cimex rotundatus* Signoret in tropical Africa and Asia. The former has a straight posterior margin of the prothorax while the latter is rounded.

- 11b. With wing pads; not parasitic. . . . . 12  
 12a. Fore legs with greatly thickened femora.  
 Fig. 365. . . . . Family PHYMATIDAE

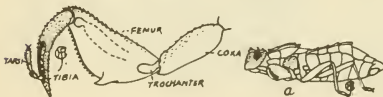


Fig. 365. a, Ambush bug, *Phymata erosa fasciata* (Gray); b, fore leg.

This family of "ambush bugs" contains about 150 described species. They feed upon many kinds of insects including honey bees.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

12b. Fore legs somewhat thickened. Fig. 366. . . . Family REDUVIIDAE

About 2,500 species of the assassin bugs have been described. They are predacious and feed upon insects. Some species invade habitations in search of insects and other household pests, but often inflict wounds on humans. A few species which suck blood from rodents and other animals including man are carriers of trypanosomes.

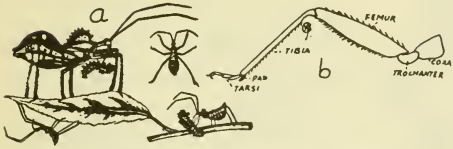


Fig. 366. a, Wheel bug, *Arilus cristatus* (L.) (From Glover); b, Fore leg.

13a. Dorsal scent glands prominent. (See Fig. 367). . . . .14

13b. Dorsal scent glands not prominent. . . . .16

14a. Body broad and oval, with more than 3 dorsal abdominal segments with scent glands.

Fig. 367. . . . .Family PENTATOMIDAE

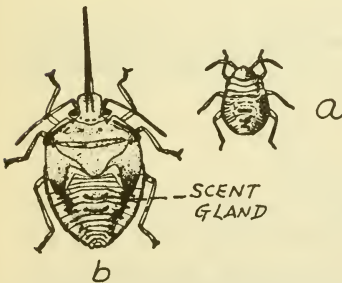


Fig. 367. *Acrosternum hilaris* (Say): a, 1st instar; b, later instar.

They are called stink bugs or shield bugs. About 5,000 species are known. They are often destructive to orchards and other agricultural crops. The members of the subfamily Asopinæ are predacious upon other insects and in consequence are counted as helpful.

14b. Body elongate, with less than 3 dorsal scent glands. . . . .15

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

15a. Antennae inserted high on side of head, about the position of the upper half of the eye. Fig. 368. . . . . Family LYGAEIDAE

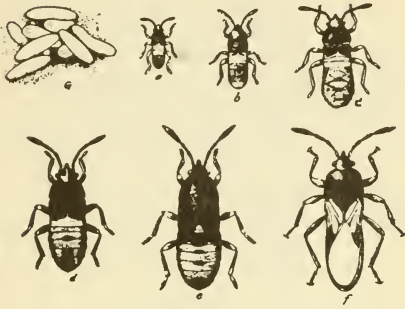


Fig. 368. Chinch bug, *Blissus leucopterus* (Say): a-e, 1st to 5th instars; f, adult; g, eggs.

About 2,000 species are described. Most of them are destructive to crops: the chinch bug, *Blissus leucopterus* (Say), and the false chinch bugs, *Nysius* spp. are serious pests. Some species belonging to the genus, *Geocoris* are predacious on other injurious insects.

15b. Antennae inserted low on side of head, about the position of the lower half of the eyes. Fig. 369. . . . . Family COREIDAE

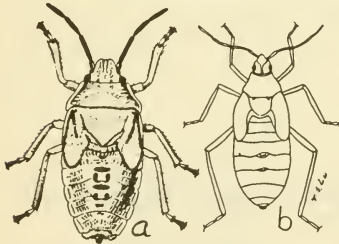


Fig. 369. a, *Leptocorixa variicornis* Fab., 5th (last) instar; b, Squash bug, *Anasa tristis* (De Geer).

About 1,000 species have been described. They are destructive to crops. The squash bug, *Anasa tristis* (DeGeer) is very injurious to pumpkins, melons, gourds and squashes. The nymphs are often associated with the adults.

16a. Body spinous; meso- and metapleuron fused into a single piece. Fig. 370. . . . . Family TINGITIDAE

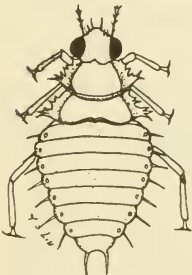


Fig. 370. *Corythucha arcuata* (Say).

About 700 species of lace bugs have been described. They are plant feeders. The eggs are laid in the plant tissues and the young are spinous. Look on the underside of leaves for them.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

16b. Body not spinous, meso- and metapleuron distinct.

Fig. 371. ....Family MIRIDAE



Fig. 371. Tarnish plant bug, *Lygus oblineatus* (Say).

They are called plant bugs or leaf bugs. About 5,000 species have been described. They are mostly plant feeders, but some are predacious. The tarnished plant bug, *Lygus oblineatus* (Say) and *Creontiades pallidus* Rambur carry plant diseases.

ORDER HOMOPTERA

1a. Beak evidently arising from the head; tarsi 3-segmented. Fig. 372... 2

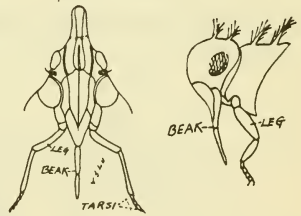


Fig. 372. Cephalic aspect (a) and lateral aspect (b) of head and legs.

1b. Beak evidently arising between the fore legs; tarsi 1 or 2-segmented; insects usually live in colonies. Fig. 373. .... 6



Fig. 373. Beak (a) arising between the fore legs.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

2a. Large insects, live underground in nymph stage; fore legs enlarged and adapted for digging. Fig. 374. . . . . Family CICADIDAE

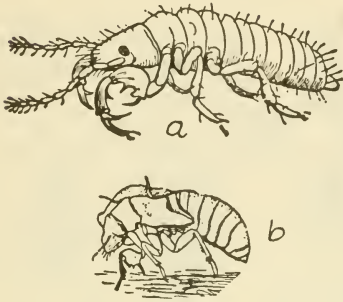


Fig. 374. Periodical cicada, *Magicicada septendecim* (L.): a, nymph; b, nymphal skin.

About 1,500 species of cicadas have been described. Eggs are laid in stems, twigs, etc. A few weeks after hatching, the nymphs crawl into the ground and feed upon the roots of plants for a long period. The 17-year cicada, *Magicicada septendecim* (L.) spends almost the full 17 years of its life cycle in the nymph stage. A strain living in the southern states completes its life cycle in 13 years.

2b. Smaller insects, seldom over half an inch long; live on plants; fore legs not adapted for digging. . . . . 3

3a. Antennae inserted on the sides of the checks beneath the eyes. Fig. 375. . . . . Family FULGORIDAE

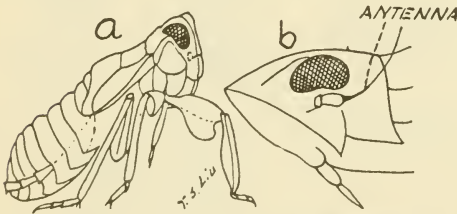


Fig. 375. a, Cranberry toad bug, *Phylloscelis atra* Germar; b, Lateral aspect of head.

This family is represented in the United States by about 400 known species. They are called lanternflies and all are plant feeders. Certain tropical forms are luminous. Some species secrete large quantities of wax.

3b. Antennae inserted in front of and between the eyes. Fig. 376. . . . . 4



Fig. 376. Front aspect of head.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

### 4a. Thorax with tubercles or spines.

Fig. 377. ....Family MEMBRACIDAE



About 200 known species of treehoppers are represented in North America. They are plant feeders. Eggs are laid in groups arranged in two parallel slits in twigs of trees or shrubs. The nymphs are different from their adults in the absence of the pronotal process, but filaments or spinose projections are often developed on the tergites.

Fig. 377. *Stictocephala* sp.:  
a, 4th instar;  
b, 5th instar.

### 4b. Thorax without tubercles or spines. .... 5

### 5a. Hind tibiae with 1 or 2 stout teeth, and crowned with short, stout spines at the tip. Fig. 378. ....Family CERCOPIIDAE

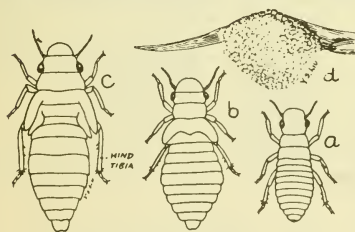


Fig. 378. a, b, c, *Philaenus spumarius* (L.) (1st intermediate and last instars); d, A spittle mass of the lined spittle-bug, *Philaenus lineatus* (L.)

They are called froghoppers on account of the frog-like appearance of both the young and the adults. They are also known as spittle-bugs since the nymphs of some genera hide in a mass of white froth. The frothing is the result of a fluid issuing from the anus becoming blown into bubbles by the anus.

### 5b. Hind tibiae with a row of spines.

Fig. 379. ....Family CICADELLIDAE

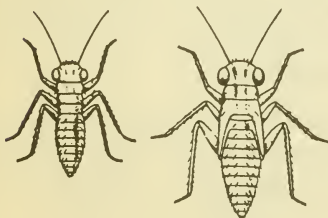


Fig. 379. The potato leafhopper, *Empoasca fabae* (Harris) 2nd and 4th instars.

There are more than 700 species of leafhoppers known in the United States. They are able to leap powerfully and feed on many different kinds of plants. The leafhoppers not only cause damage to cultivated plants but also transfer plant diseases.

6a. Tarsi with but 1 claw and 1 segment.

Fig. 380. ....Family COCCIDAE

The members of this family are scale-insects, mealy-bugs and others. They live on the stems, leaves, roots and are the most serious pests of horticulturists. However, there are some useful species: shellac is prepared from the lac-insects, *Laccifer lacca* Kerr in India. The wax is produced by *Ericerus pela* Chavannes in China; and the cochineal is composed of dried bodies of *Coccus cacti* L.

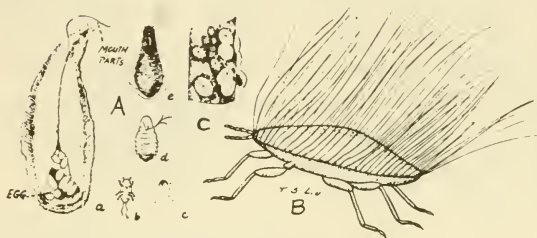
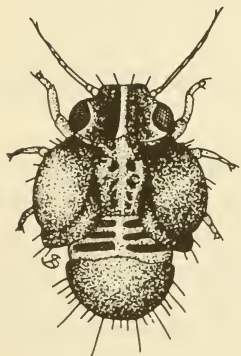


Fig. 380. A, the scale, *Mytilaspis citricola* Packard: a, mature stage with eggs; b, newly hatched nymph; c, same with waxy secretion; d & e, intermediate stages. B, *Walkeriana ovilla* Green, 1st instar. C, Florida wax scale, *Ceroplastes floridensis* Comstock, different stages.

6b. Tarsi with 2 claws and 2-segmented. ....7

7a. Hind legs fitted for leaping. Fig. 381. ....Family CHERMIDAE



The members of this family have the ability to jump and are called jumping plant lice. They are plant feeders and often occur in large numbers. All of them secrete honey dew and a few produce galls on the leaves.

The nymphs are flat and possess large wing pads and often have a marginal fringe surrounding the abdomen. Some are covered with a waxy secretion.

Fig. 381. Pear psylla. *Psylla pyricola* Foerst.

7b. Hind legs not fitted for leaping. ....8

8a. Scale-like insects, with waxy filaments around lateral margins; antennae inconspicuous. Fig. 382. ....Family ALEYRODIDAE

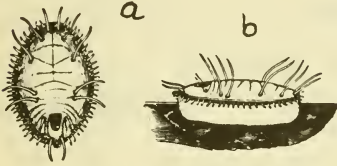


Fig. 382. *Aleyrodes* sp.: a, dorsal aspect; b, lateral aspect.

The common name, whitefly is derived from the covering of whitish powdery wax on the body of the adults. The young produce quantities of honeydew. The greenhouse whitefly, *Trialeurodes vaporariorum* (Westwood) is cosmopolitan and a general feeder.

8b. Not as 8a. ....9

9a. Cornicles usually present. Fig. 383. ....Family APHIDIDAE



Fig. 383. Green peach aphid, *Myzus persicae* (Sulzer): a, 2nd instar; b, 3rd instar.

About 2,000 species have been described. The aphids have a complicated life history which is characterized by an alternation of parthenogenetic generation with a sexual generation. Moreover, they have alternations of winged and wingless forms. The host plants are also changed in different seasons.

9b. Cornicles always wanting. Fig. 384. ....Family PHYLLOXERIDAE

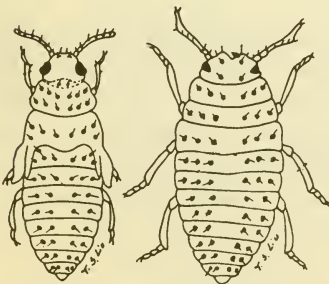


Fig. 384. *Phylloxera* spp., root-inhabiting form.

This family is closely related to the aphids. They are often red, orange or yellow and are frequently covered with wax. The grape phylloxera which feeds on the leaves and roots of some common grapes is a well-known species.

ORDER NEUOPTERA

1a. Mouth parts chewing type. Fig. 385. ....2

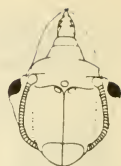


Fig. 385. Dorsal aspect of head.

1b. Mouth parts mandibulo-suctorial type.  
 Fig. 386. ....4

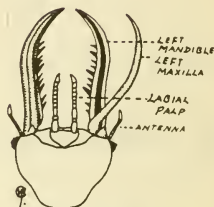


Fig. 386. Mandibulo-suctorial type mouth parts.

2a. Abdomen with lateral filaments  
 (see Fig. 389). ....3

2b. Abdomen without lateral filaments.

Fig. 387. ....Family RAPHIDIIDAE

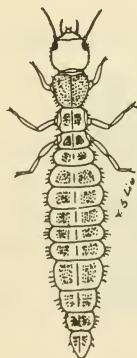


Fig. 387. *Raphidia oblita* Hagen.

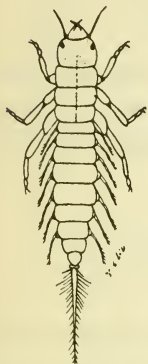
There are 10 species described in the United States, and 12 species in Europe. *Raphidia hermandi* Navas is known in Japan. The adults are called snakeflies. The larvae are found under bark and they are common in California under loose bark of the eucalyptus. They are predacious and believed to be beneficial.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3a. Tip of abdomen with a caudal filament; sides of body with 7 pairs of segmented filaments; without anal prolegs.

Fig. 388. ....Family SIALIDAE



The larvae live in swiftly flowing streams adhering to the lower side of stones and also in trashy places filled with aquatic plants. The full-grown larva leaves the water and transforms in an earthen cell on the banks of the streams or lakes. Two or three weeks later the adult emerges. It is called an alderfly. The larvae are predacious and feed upon different kinds of small animals.

Fig. 388. Smoky alderfly, *Sialis infumata* Newman.

3b. Tip of abdomen without a caudal filament; sides of body with 8 pairs of unsegmented filaments; with a pair of hooked anal prolegs. Fig. 389. ....Subfamily Corydalinae, SIALIDAE

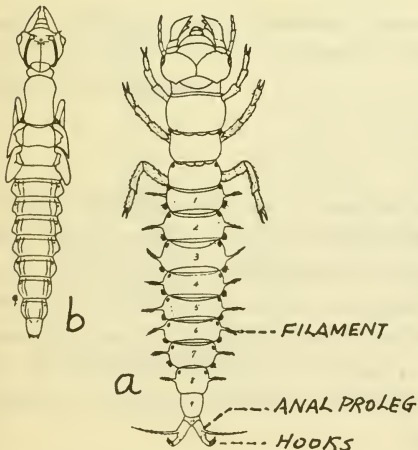


Fig. 389. *Corydalis cornutus* (L.): a. larva; b, pupa.

About 80 species of dobsonflies have been described. The larvae are found under stones in slow or swift water and are predacious on naiads of dragonflies, stoneflies and Mayflies. These larvae which are known as helgramites are much used for bait in fishing. They are rather readily caught by holding a net down stream below stones in rapids. When the stones are moved the helgramites swim or are washed into the net.

- 4a. Aquatic or semiaquatic. . . . .5
- 4b. Terrestrial. . . . .6
- 5a. Mandibles and maxillae curved slightly upwards; without abdominal gills but with spiracles; larvae live under stones in or near water. Fig. 390. . . . .Family OSMYLIDAE



Fig. 390. *Osmylus chrysops* (L.)

There are about 50 described species but none have been found in North America. The larvae lurk under stones or about moss either in or near the water. Their food consists of dipterous larvae.

- 5b. Mandibles and maxillae curved outward; with abdominal gills; larvae live in water and feed on sponges. Fig. 391. . . . .Family SISYRIDAE



Fig. 391. *Sisyra umbrata* Ndm.

About 20 species have been described. The larvae feed upon fresh-water sponges. Accordingly the adults are called "spongilla-flies." They may be also found on bryozoans and algae. Pupation takes place in an oval loose double cocoon in soil or under stones. Eggs are laid in masses on objects standing in or overhanging fresh-water, and are sometimes covered by a silken web.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

6a. Abdomen more than two times longer than thorax; larvae with hypermetamorphosis. Fig. 392. . . . . Family MANTISPIDAE

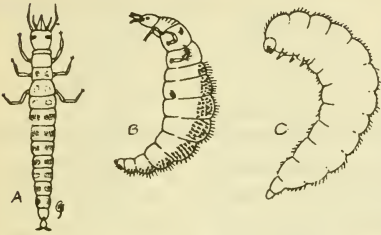


Fig. 392. *Mantispa styriaca* Poda: a, newly hatched; b, 1st instar fully fed; c, last instar

The family consists of about 170 known species. The larvae are of two different forms: the first instar is thysanuriform with a squarish head; the second and later instars become robust and eruciiform with a small head and weak legs. The fullgrown larvae spin cocoons and pupate within the last larval skin. The habits of larvae are parasitic on eggs of spiders and also in the nests of *Pilybia* wasps.

6b. Not as 6a. . . . . 7

7a. Pro- and mesothorax modified into a long and slender neck.

Fig. 393. . . . . Family NEMOPTERIDAE

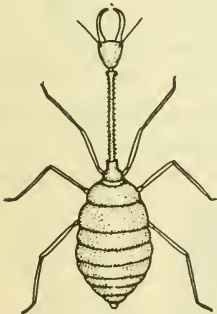


Fig. 393. *Pterocroce storeyi*, Withycombe.

The larvae are predacious and feed upon psocids and other small insects. They cover themselves with dust particles and are found in caves and buildings in semiarid regions and desert. Pupation occurs in a cocoon of silk and debris. They belong to the eastern hemisphere.

7b. Pro- and mesothorax normal. . . . . 8

8a. Antennae with long hairs; labial palps long and clavate, extended in front of head; mandibles and maxillae hid underneath the labrum (if long, straight and needle-like).

Fig. 394. . . . . Family CONIOPTERYGIDAE

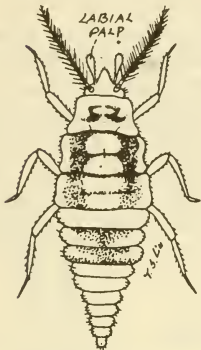


Fig. 394. *Parasemidalis flaviceps* Banks.

This family includes about 50 known species. The adults look like aphids. The structures of their larvae leads us to regard them as Neuroptera. The larvae feed upon aphids, scale-insects and the eggs of red-spiders. When full-grown they make a double cocoon in which pupation takes place.

8b. Not as 8a. . . . . 9

9a. Empodium trumpet-shaped. Fig. 395. . . . . Family CHRYSOPIDAE

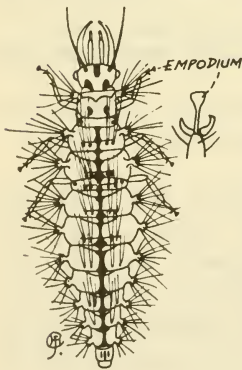


Fig. 395. Golden-eye lacewing, *Chrysopa oculata* Say.

Nearly 500 species of green lacewings have been described. Their larvae are known as aphid-lions and feed on aphids, mites, leaf-hoppers, scale-insects and other small insects. The eggs are laid singly or in group on long slender stalks. In some species the larvae are protected with trash or debris.

9b. Empodium not trumpet-shaped. . . . . 10

10a. Tarsi and tibia of hind leg fused into a single segment; mandible with teeth. . . . . 11

10b. Not as 10a. Fig. 396. . . . . Family **HEMEROBIIDAE**

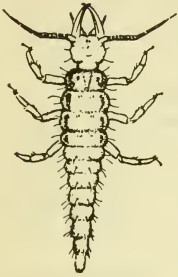


Fig. 396. **Hemerobius pacificus**  
Banks, 1st instar.

This family consists of about 220 known species. Their adults are called brown lacewings. The larvae resemble the aphid-lions but are smooth without tubercles. Only the 1st instar larvae possess trumpet-shaped empodia which becomes pad-like and greatly reduced in the later instars. They are predacious and feed on aphids, scale-insects, mealybugs, whiteflies, psyllids, etc. The eggs are devoid of pedicels.

11a. Sides of thorax and abdomen with projecting filaments; head dilated posteriorly. Fig. 397. . . . . Family **ASCALAPHIDAE**



Fig. 397. **Ulu-lodes hyalina**  
Latr.

About 210 species have been described. The larvae resemble ant-lions in the form of the body, but they have a finger-like appendage on each side of the segment. They live in ambush on the surface of the ground, with the body more or less covered, and wait for small insect prey.

11b. Sides of thorax and abdomen without projecting filaments; head not dilated posteriorly. Fig. 398. . . . . Family **MYRMELEONTIDAE**

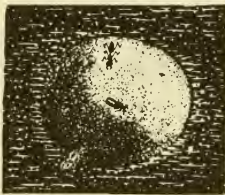


Fig. 398. a, Ant-lion, *Myreleon* sp.; b, A pitfall.

This family consists of about 650 described species. The larvae are known as ant-lions. They make pitfalls in sand to trap the ants and other wingless small animals. However, some species do not make pits but simply hide under sand or debris.



## ORDER TRICHOPTERA

(Larval key to some important families, adapted from Ross.)

- 1a. Either meso- or metanotum or both with sclerotized shield subdivided into separated plates or membranous. Fig. 399. ....3



Fig. 399. Dorsal aspect of thorax.

- 1b. Both meso- and metanotum each with a single, sclerotized shield embracing the entire notum. ....2
- 2a. Abdomen with gills. Fig. 400. ....Family HYDROPSYCHIDAE



Fig. 400. *Hydropsyche* sp.

The larvae are campodeiform, often living gregariously under and about trash, logs, stones, etc. or in running water. They spin loose silken nets. Their food habits are both carnivorous and herbivorous.

- 2b. Abdomen without gills. Fig. 401. ....Family HYDROPTILIDAE



Fig. 401. *Hydroptila waubesiana* Betten. (Redrawn from Ross)

The larvae construct cases which open at both ends. They feed on algae. A modified type of hypermetamorphosis occurs in the larval stage. The early instars of some genera have a slender body fitted for free, active life and have no case.

- 3a. Anal legs projecting beyond 10th abdominal segment. Fig. 402. ....4



Fig. 402. Apex of abdomen.

3b. Anal legs appearing as lateral sclerites of 10th abdominal segment. Fig. 403. ....5

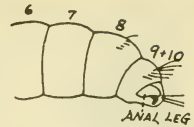


Fig. 403. Apex of abdomen.

4a. Dorsum of 9th abdominal segment with a sclerotized shield.  
 Fig. 404. ....Family RHYACOPHILIDAE

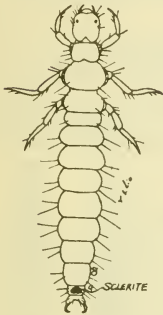


Fig. 404. *Rhyacophila fenestra* Ross. (Redrawn from Ross)

The larvae of the subfamily Rhyacophilinae are predacious and free-living while the larvae of the subfamily Glossosomatinae are the saddle-case makers.

These are the most primitive of present-day caddisflies. The larvae are campodeiform and possess tracheal gills.

4b. Dorsum of 9th abdominal segment without a sclerotized shield.  
 Fig. 405. ....Family PHILOPOTAMIDAE



Fig. 405. *Philopotamus* sp. (Redrawn from Ross)

The larvae are campodeiform and live gregariously in swift mountain streams where they construct net-like cases in the form of either cylindrical tubes or broad sacks. Prior to pupating, the larva builds a rough shelter of stone and encloses itself in a cocoon.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 5a. Claws of hind legs much shorter than those of middle legs.  
 Fig. 406. ....Family **MOLANNIDAE**

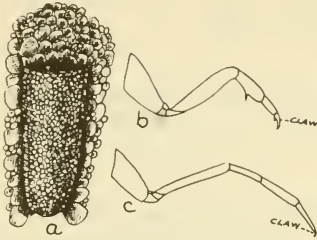


Fig. 406. a, Case of *Molanna uniphila* Vorhies; b, Middle leg; c, Hind leg.

Larvae live on the sandy bottoms of streams and lakes and construct shield-shaped cases consisting of a central cylindrical chamber flanked on each side by an extension.

- 5b. Claws of hind legs as long as those of middle legs. ....6

- 6a. Antennae long, at least 8 times as long as wide.  
 Fig. 407. ....Family **LEPTOCERIDAE**

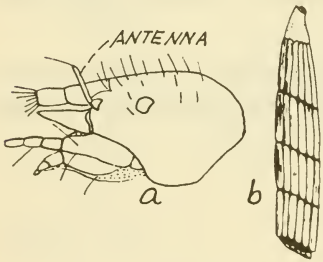


Fig. 407. a, Lateral aspect of head; b, *Trianodes flavescense* Banks.

All the larvae make cases using a variety of materials and constructing cases of various shapes. They inhabit a wide variety of streams, ponds, lakes and rivers. The larvae can swim freely with their legs outside the case. They feed on vegetation.

- 6b. Antennae short, never more than 4 times as long as wide. ....7

- 7a. Mesonotum with sclerotized plates.  
 Fig. 408. ....Family **LIMNEPHILIDAE**

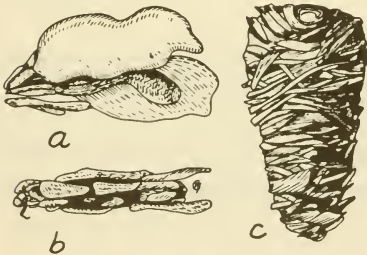


Fig. 408. a, Case of *Astenophylax* sp.; b, Larva with case of *Stenophylax* sp.; c, Case of *Limnephilus indivisus* Walker.

There are about 400 described species in this family. The larvae are eruciform with a prosternal tubercle or horn. They live mostly in quiet water and a few species in swift water. The genus *Enoicyla* live only in damp moss on land. The cases are tubular and ornamented with sticks, tiny shells, sand and small pebbles. They are herbivorous.

# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

7b. Mesonotum submembranous, or with a pair of bar-shaped sclerites. Fig. 409. . . . . 8



Fig. 409. Dorsal aspect of mesothorax.

8a. Mesonotum with a pair of bar-shaped sclerites. Fig. 410. . . . . Family LEPTOCERIDAE

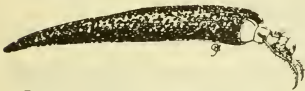


Fig. 410. *Leptocella albida* (Walker). (Redrawn from Ross)

This is a large family of wide distribution. The cases are cylindrical or tapering and may be either straight or curved. They frequent both running streams and quiet water and are good swimmers.

8b. Mesonotum without a pair of bar-shaped sclerites. Fig. 411. . . . . Family PHRYGANEIDAE

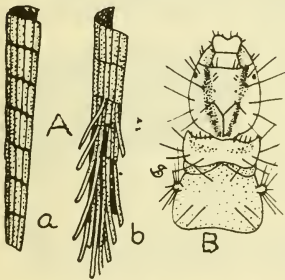


Fig. 411. A, *Agrypnia vestita* (Walker): a, larval case; b, young larval case; B, *Ptilostomis ocellifera* (Walker), anterior end of larva.

Most of the larval cases are long and built in a spiral. They live in still or slowly running water. In general they favor marshes and lakes for their abodes, but some species are taken in rivers and streams.

## ORDER LEPIDOPTERA

### Key to the LARVAE of the more important families

- 1a. Thoracic legs present and segmented. . . . . 2
- 1b. Thoracic legs absent or reduced to fleshy swellings. . . . . 7
- 2a. Body with large, ovate scales, arranged in a double row on each side. Fig. 412. . . . . Family MICROPTERYGIDAE

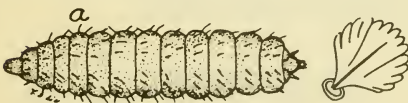


Fig. 412. a, *Micropteryx* sp.; b, a scale.

The larvae of *Micropteryx* live on wet moss and are characterized by the presence of 8 pairs of segmented abdominal prolegs. The larvae of *Sabatinka* occur among liverworts.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 2b. Body with setae only. . . . . 3  
 3a. Prolegs rudimentary or wanting; crochets absent. . . . . 4

- 3b. Prolegs at least indicated by rudimentary crochets.  
 Fig. 413. . . . . 12

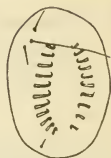


Fig. 413.  
Crochets.

- 4a. Front extending upwards to vertex; small species.  
 Fig. 414. . . . . Family COLEOPHORIDAE

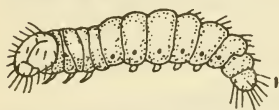


Fig. 414. *Coleophora malivorella* Riley.

This family contains about 1,000 described species. The caterpillars are known as leaf miners and case bearers. They feed on leaves, flowers, fruits and seeds of various plants. Some systematists make this group a subfamily of the TINEIDAE.

- 4b. Front not extending to vertex.  
 Fig. 415. . . . . 5

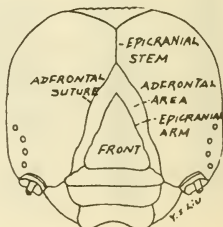


Fig. 415. Cephalic aspect of head.

- 5a. Head retracted; body often with spines or secondary hairs; primary setae obsolete; body with obscure incisures and usually with conspicuous pits. Fig. 416. . . . . Family LIMACODIDAE



Fig. 416. Saddle-backed slug caterpillar, *Sabbina stimulea* Clemens.

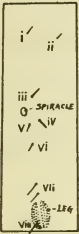
About 850 species are described. The larvae are slug-like and known as slug-caterpillars. The body bears tubercles and stinging or poisonous hairs. They feed on various plants.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

5b. Head exposed; body with primary setae and strong incisures... 6

6a. Setae iv and v distant on abdominal segments; prolegs present.  
Fig. 417. ....(*Tegeticula*) Family INCURVARIIDAE

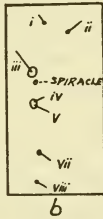
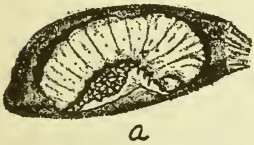


About 300 species have been described. The caterpillars of the Adelinae are case-bearers and are known as fairy moths, while that of the Proxodoxinae are borers in seeds and stems of *Yucca* and other Liliaceae. As used here this includes McDunnough's superfamily INCURVAROIDEA.

Fig. 417. Setal map of an abdominal segment.

6b. Setae iv and v adjacent; prolegs absent.

Fig. 418. ....A few GELECHIIDAE

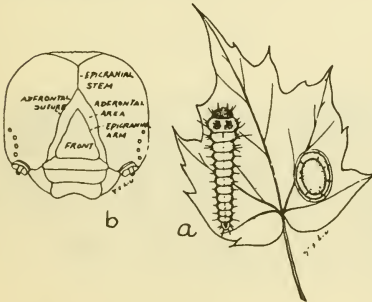


The members of this large family vary rather widely in habits. Some are gall makers, others destructive to stored cereals and still others attack the fruit of living plants.

Fig. 418. a, *Sitotroga cerealella* Oliv.; b, setal map of an abdominal segment.

7a. Body spindle-shaped; head with closed front (separated from the vertex by the epicranial).

Fig. 419. ....Family INCURVARIIDAE



The larvae are known as needle miners and leave a characteristic pattern in leaves. The adults are exceedingly small.

Fig. 419. a, Maple case bearer, *Paraclemensia acerifoliella* Fitch; b, cephalic aspect of head, showing the closed front.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 7b. Body cylindrical or flattened; if somewhat spindle-shaped, the front extends upwards to vertex. ....8  
 8a. Head with 1 ocellus on each side, or none. ....9  
 8b. Head with 6 ocelli on each side. ....11  
 9a. Front triangular; ocellus at front.

Fig. 420. .... Family **ERIOCRANIIDAE**

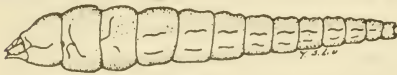


Fig. 420. *Mnemonica auricyanea* Wlshm..

The caterpillars mine in leaves. The pupae possess toothed mandibles. They are closely related to the MICROPTERYGIDAE.

- 9b. Front quadrangular; ocellus lateral. ....10  
 10a. Front widest at posterior end; body usually flattened; prolegs when present, on 3rd to 5th abdominal segments.

Fig. 421. .... Family **GRACILARIIDAE**

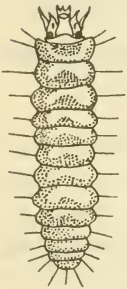


Fig. 421. *Lithocolletis hamadryadella* Clemens (round form larva).

The larvae are of two types: the young have a flat head, ocelli very small and variable in number. They are miners of leaves, bark, or fruits. The full-grown caterpillars are cylindrical, with normal head, prolegs well developed on the 3rd to 5th abdominal segments. They mine, or web, or skeletonize the leaves. The azalea leaf miner, *Gracilaria azaleella* Brants imported from Japan to the United States is a pest in green house.

- 10b. Front widest at anterior end; body cylindrical; prolegs on 2nd to 7th abdominal segments. Fig. 422. .... Family **NEPTICULIDAE**

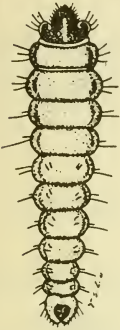


Fig. 422. Plum leaf-miner, *Nepticula slingerlandella* Kft.

They are called serpentine miners. The caterpillar is minute, about 2.5 to 10 mm. long. They mine in leaves and sometimes in fruits and bark. The mines are linear or serpentine. Certain species of *Ectoedemia* are gall makers. Pupation occurs in a cocoon in the soil.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 11a. Abdomen with rudimentary prolegs, bearing crochets on 3rd to 6th segments. Fig. 423. ....Family TISCHERIIDAE



The caterpillars make blotch mines in the leaves of oak. But *Tischeria malifoliella* Clemens makes trumpet leaf mines on apple.

Fig. 423. *Tischeria malifoliella* Clemens.

- 11b. Abdomen without prolegs on 6th segment.

Family GRACILARIDAE

- 12a. Body with tufted or secondary hairs; at least 2 setae on tubercle vi of 6th abdominal segment, or with additional setae on proleg. Fig. 424. ....41

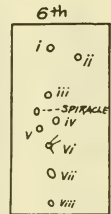


Fig. 424. Setal map of 6th abdominal segment.

- 12b. Body without tufted or secondary hairs; tubercle vi with a single seta; tubercle vii with at most 3 setae. Fig. 425. ....13

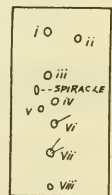


Fig. 425. Setal map of 6th abdominal segment.

- 13a. Without prolegs on 6th abdominal segment.

Family GRACILARIDAE

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

13b. With prolegs on 6th abdominal segment. ....14

14a. Crochets of prolegs arranged in a circle or ellipse (sometimes incomplete), or in transverse bands. Fig. 426. ....15

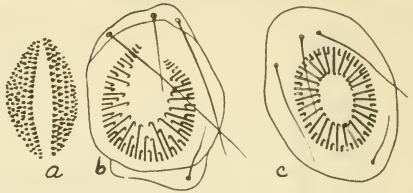


Fig. 426. Crochets: a, in transverse bands; b, in incomplete circle; c, in complete circle.

14b. Crochets forming a single band (sometimes with a few vestigial ones in addition). Fig. 427. ....37



Fig. 427. Crochets in single band.

15a. Prespiracular wart of prothorax with 2 setae. Fig. 428. ....Family PYRALIDIDAE

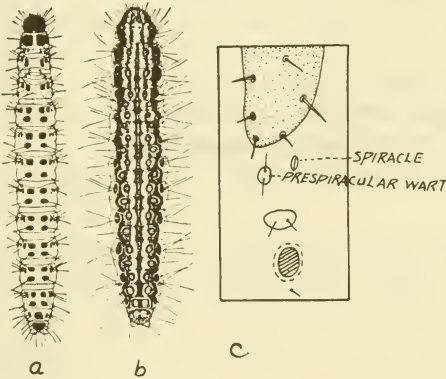


Fig. 428. a, Garden webworm, *Loxostege similis* (Guen.); b, beet webworm, *Loxostege sticticalis* (L.); c, setal map of prothorax.

This family is the second largest of the order and about 10,000 species have been described. The larvae are largely phytophagous and some feed upon dried vegetable matter. The meal moth, *Pyralis farinalis* (L.) feeds on cereal and cereal products. The caterpillars of the subfamily Schoenobiinae are borers in water plants, while *Nymphula nymphaeta* (L.) and *N. stagnata* Donovan are semiaquatic species living in silk-lined sacs on water plants in Europe.

15b. Prespiracular wart of prothorax with 3 setae. Fig. 429. ....16

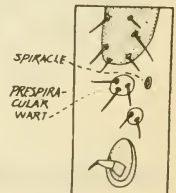


Fig. 429. Setal map of prothorax.

# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 16a. Crochets of prolegs arranged in 2 transverse bands.  
 Fig. 430. ....17

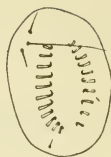


Fig. 430. Crochets in two bands.

- 16b. Crochets of prolegs arranged in a circle or ellipse, sometimes broadly interrupted.  
 Fig. 431. ....22

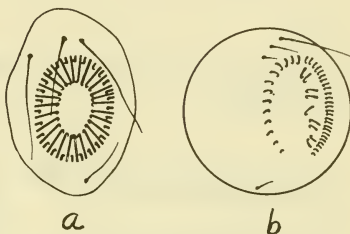


Fig. 431. Crochets: a, in complete circle; b, in incomplete circle.



Fig. 432. Crochets in a single series.

- 17a. Prolegs with a single series of crochets, or with 2 bands formed of several series of alternate crochets.  
 Fig. 432. ....Family INCURVARIIDAE

- 17b. Prolegs with 2 simple series of crochets.  
 Fig. 433. ....18



Fig. 433. Crochets in two series.

- 18a. Abdominal setae iv and v remote. Fig. 434. (Compare with Fig. 435). ....(Bucculatrix) Family LYONETIIDAE

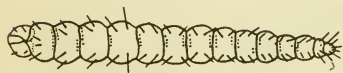


Fig. 434, *Lyonetia speculella* Clemens.

The caterpillars frequent forested areas and orchards. They are mostly leaf miners. Those of *Bucculatrix* are first miners and later skeletonizers. Pupation takes place in a cocoon. The cocoon of *Bucculatrix* is ribbed and surrounded by a palisade of erect silken filaments.



# HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 18b. Abdominal setae iv and v adjacent.  
 Fig. 435. ....19

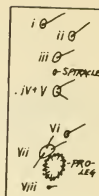


Fig. 435. Setal map of an abdominal segment.

- 19a. Crochets of anal prolegs arranged in 2 groups.  
 Fig. 436. ....Family GELECHIIDAE



Fig. 436. Potato tuberworm, *Gnortmoschema operculella* (Zeller).

The larvae pictured here is scattered very widely and does heavy damage to the fruit of tomatoes as well as to potato tubers. It attacks still other members of the nightshade family also.

- 19b. Crochets of anal prolegs in a single series. ....20

- 20a. Front extending about one third way to vertex.  
 Fig. 437. ....(*Cossula*) Family COSSIDAE



Fig. 437. *Cossus liquiperda*.

The common goat moth, *Cossus cossus* (L.) of Europe, is an example. The caterpillars bore into the trunks and limbs of broad-leaved deciduous trees and large shrubs. They make large tunnels in the trunk. The larvae of the carpenterworm, *Prionoxystus robiniae* (Peck) of America, make large galleries in trees which usually cause the death of the trees.

- 20b. Front extending at least two thirds way to vertex. ....21

- 21a. Spiracles elliptical, normal in size; those of 8th abdominal segment located higher than the others.

- Fig. 438. ....Family AGERIIDAE

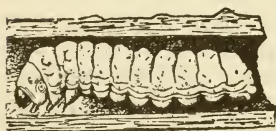


Fig. 438. Squash-vine borer, *Melittia setyriniformis* Hubner.

The caterpillars live as borers in roots, trunks and limbs of shrubs and trees and herbaceous plants. *Aegeria apiformis* (Clerck) is a common species which infests poplars and willows chiefly. The too well known squash borer belongs here.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

21b. Spiracles circular, very small; the last pair about in line with others. . . . . Family COLEOPHORIDAE

22a. Abdominal setae iv and v remote, or v absent in a few small species. Fig. 439. . . . . 23



Fig. 439. Setal map of an abdominal segment.

22b. Abdominal setae iv and v adjacent, often on a common tubercle. Fig. 440. . . . . 27

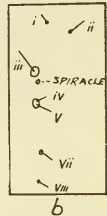


Fig. 440. Setal map of an abdominal segment.

23a. Prolegs with crochets arranged in a single complete ellipse. Fig. 441. . . . . 24

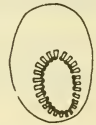


Fig. 441. Crochets in a single complete ellipse.

23b. Prolegs with crochets arranged in a broken ellipse, or with additional rudimentary series at the base of normal ones. Fig. 442. . . . . 26

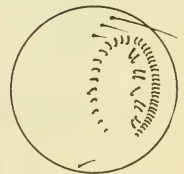
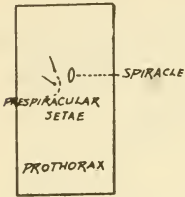


Fig. 442. Crochets in broken ellipse.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

24a. Prespiracular setae of prothorax about as far from its spiracle as from each other; abdominal seta i higher than ii.

Fig. 443. . . . . Family LYONETIIDAE



This small family of ribbed case bearers live as tiny leaf miners or skeletonizers. They are often flattened. The adults are usually brightly colored.

Fig. 443. Setal map of prothorax. .

24b. Prespiracular setae of prothorax about twice as far from its spiracle as from each other.

Fig. 444. . . . . 25

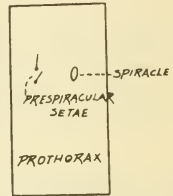


Fig. 444. Setal map of prothorax.

25a. Abdominal setae i much lower than ii.

Fig. 445. . . . . Family TINEIDAE

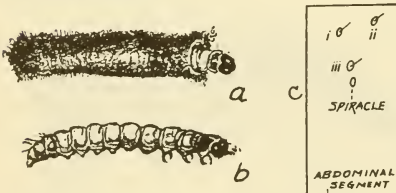


Fig. 445. Casemaking clothes moth, *Tinea pelionella* (L.): a, larva with case; b, larva; c, setal map of an abdominal segment.

The larvae of the case-making clothes moth, *Tinea pelionella* (L.), live in portable parchment-like cases. The webbing clothes moth, *Tineola biselliella* (Hummel), is characterized by its larvae making webs with particles on which they feed. Both feed on wool, hair, skin, feathers and other animal matter.

25b. Abdominal setae i not lower than ii.

Fig. 446. . . . . Family HELIODINIDAE



Fig. 446. Setal map of an abdominal segment.

The caterpillars are tiny either herbivorous or predacious. They feed on fruits and leaves and some mine in fruits. Some species are believed to be predators of mealybugs and scale-insects. They are known as "sun moths."

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

26a. Meso- and metathorax with seta ia in front of ib and well separated; abdominal seta iv above level of spiracle.

Fig. 447. . . . . Family **HEPIALIDAE**

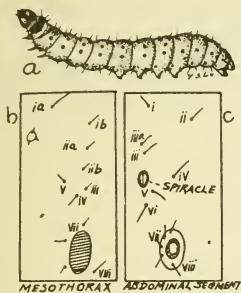


Fig. 447. a, *Hepialus humuli*; b, setal map of mesothorax; c, setal map of an abdominal segment.

The caterpillars are all plant borers including roots, stems, twigs of grasses, shrubs and trees. Some species are quite large and often somewhat wrinkled. Rather numerous hairs arise from tubercles. The larvae are usually dusky, whitish or tinged with yellow. The adults are narrow winged medium to large sized moths and are known as swifts.

26b. Meso- and metathorax with seta ia and ib closely associated; abdominal seta iv below level of spiracle.

Fig. 448. . . . . Family **YPONOMENTIDAE**

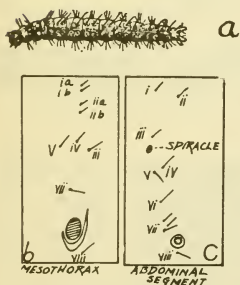


Fig. 448. a, Diamond-back moth, *Plutella maculipennis* (Curt.); b, setal map of mesothorax; c, setal map of an abdominal segment.

The caterpillars are often found gregariously living in webs or mining in leaves, twigs and fruits. They are destructive to conifers and other trees. The species here pictured feeds on members of the mustard family. The small green caterpillars start as miners but presently feed on the surface of the plant.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

27a. Last pair of abdominal spiracles placed dorsally and closer together on middle line. Fig. 449. . . . . Family CARPOSINIDAE

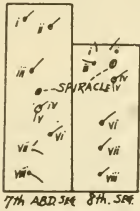


Fig. 449. Lateral aspect of 7th and 8th abdominal segments.

This family consists of about 100 described species. The caterpillars are fruit-borers. One species bores in peaches in Japan.

27b. Not as 27a. . . . . 28

28a. Mesothorax with 2 setae vii located above base of leg. Fig. 450. . . . . 29

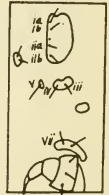


Fig. 450. Setal map of mesothorax.

28b. Mesothorax with 1 seta vii. . . . . 30

29a. Prothoracic spiracle with long axis vertical. . . . . Family THYRIDIDAE  
The caterpillars of this family are concealed feeders.

29b. Prothoracic spiracle with long axis horizontal. . . . . Family PSYCHIDAE  
Fig. 451. . . . .



The caterpillars are called bagworms because they make portable cases with leaves, twigs and other debris. They feed upon leaves, flowers, and even bark. Pupation occurs in the larval case in which the female may remain until the eggs are laid.

Fig. 451. *Thyridopteryx ephemeriformis* Haworth.



30a. Setae ii of 9th abdominal segment closer together than on any other segments, frequently on the same plate. Fig. 452. ....31

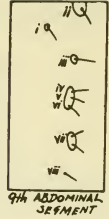


Fig. 452. Setal map of 9th abdominal segment.

30b. Setae ii of 9th abdominal segment as far apart as on other segments. Fig. 453. ....32

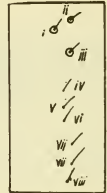
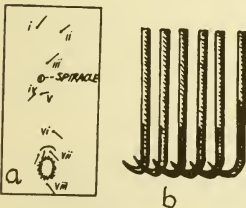


Fig. 453. Setal map of 9th abdominal segment.

31a. Crochets of prolegs uniordinal; abdominal setae iv and v horizontally placed. Fig. 454. ....Family PHALONIIDAE



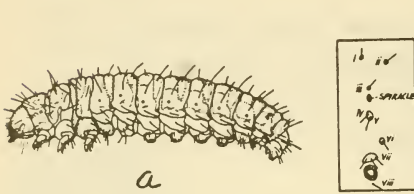
The caterpillars bore in plants or feed in seeds. They and their adult moths are small.

Fig. 454. a, Setal map of an abdominal segment; b, uniordinal crochets

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

31b. Crochets of prolegs usually multiordinal; abdominal setae iv and v in a diagonal or vertical line.

Fig. 455. ....Family TORTRICIDAE



The caterpillars are leaf rollers. They are destructive to many kinds of trees and other plants. The larvae when disturbed wriggle violently and may escape backwards from the nests of rolled leaves. The spruce budworm, *Archips fumiferana* (Clemens) and the fruit tree leaf roller, *Archips argyrospila* (Walker) are important pests.

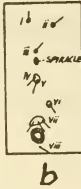
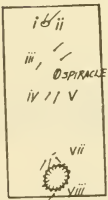


Fig. 455. a, Clover-seed caterpillar, *Laspeyresia interstinctana* Clemens; b, setal map of an abdominal segment.

32a. Abdominal setae i and ii close together.

Fig. 456. ....(*Schreckensteinia*) Family HELIODINIDAE



The members of this genus of sun moths are plant feeders. All are of small size. The family is interesting in that a few species are apparently predacious on scale insects.

Fig. 456. Setal map of an abdominal segment.

32b. Abdominal setae i and ii widely separated.

Fig. 457. ....33

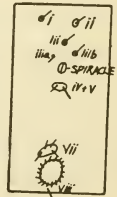


Fig. 457. Setal map of an abdominal segment.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

33a. Front reaching less than half way to vertex; crochets triordinal.  
 Fig. 458. .... Family COSSIDAE



Fig. 458. a, Leopard moth, *Zeuzera pyrina* L.; b, triordinal crochets.

The caterpillars are mostly borers in the heartwood of various kinds of woody plants. The leopard moth, *Zeuzera pyrina* (L.), the larvae bore in the branches and stems of apple, beech, birch, cherry, currant, elm, maple, oak, pear, plum, walnut, etc. The life cycle needs two years to be completed.

33b. Front reaching more or less two thirds way to the vertex, and ending in an attenuate point; crochets uniordinal or biordinal; small species. Fig. 459. .... 34

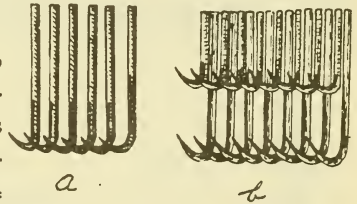


Fig. 459. Crochets: a, uniordinal; b, biordinal.

34a. Crochets of prolegs biordinal. Fig. 460. .... 35

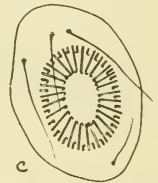


Fig. 460. Biordinal crochets.

34b. Crochets of prolegs uniordinal. Fig. 461. .... 36

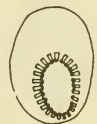


Fig. 461. Uniordinal crochets.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

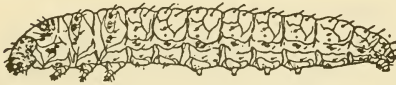
35a. 3 ocelli arranged closely together, more widely separated from the other one. Fig. 462. ....Family OECOPHORIDAE



The caterpillars usually live in webs or rolled leaves. One species is destructive to parsnips.

Fig. 462. *Depressaria heracliana* De Geer.

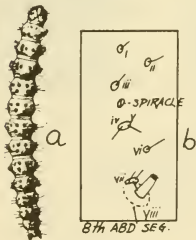
35b. Ocelli evenly spaced. Fig. 463. ....Family GELECHIIDAE



The larvae pictured here is a widely distributed and serious pest of cotton. It made its first appearance in our country in 1917.

Fig. 463. Pink bollworm, *Pectinophora gossypiella* (Saunders).

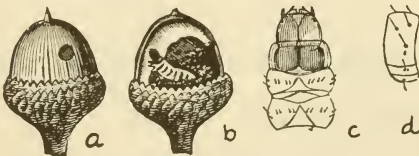
36a. Setae iii on 8th abdominal segment usually placed just above and slightly before the spiracle. Fig. 464. ....Family GLYPHIPTERYGIDAE



This family includes about 550 known species, largely oriental. The habits of the caterpillars are known as leaf rollers, leaf skeletonizers, leaf miners, stem borers and some live on webs.

Fig. 464. a, Apple and thorn skeletonizer, *Anthophila pariana* (Clerck); b, setal map of 8th abdominal segment.

36b. Setae iii on 8th abdominal segment usually placed above and behind the spiracle. Fig. 465. ....Family BLASTOBASIDAE



Some larvae are known as borers in nuts, some scavengers, and some are predacious on scale-insects.

Fig. 465. *Valentinia glandulella* Riley: a, acorn with a hole; b, caterpillar in acorn; c, head and thorax; d, an abdominal segment.

- 37a. Prespiracular wart on prothorax with 3 setae.  
 Fig. 466. ....Family YPONOMEUTIDAE

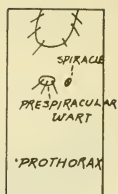


Fig. 466. Setal map of prothorax.

- 37b. Prespiracular wart on prothorax with 2 setae. ....38  
 38a. Tubercle vii on meso- and metathorax with 2 setae. ....39  
 38b. Tubercle vii on meso- and metathorax with 1 seta.  
 Fig. 467. ....Family NOCTUIDAE

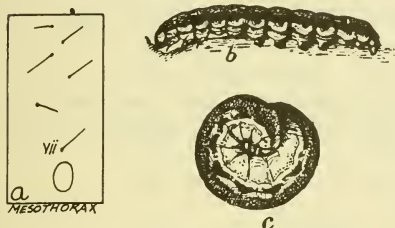


Fig. 467. a, Setal map of mesothorax; b, Tomato fruitworm, or corn earworm, *Heliothis armigera* (Hbn.); c, variegated cutworm, *Peridroma margaritosa* (Haworth). (U.S.D.A.)

About 20,000 species have been described. The caterpillars are commonly known as armyworms, cutworms, etc. Night is their usual feeding time, but when very numerous they often spread out during the day as well. Some feed on seeds and some are stem borers while the great majority are foliage feeders. They are notorious pests of agricultural crops. The corn earworm, *Heliothis armigera* (Hubner) is a cosmopolitan pest.

- 39a. Setae minute; tubercle reduced to obscure rings; head usually wide; prolegs reduced. Fig. 468. ....Family THYATIRIDAE



Fig. 468. *Thyatira derasa*.

The larvae of this small family are spanworms traveling like the geometrids. There are known as the beautiful mining moths, the "beauty" belonging to the adults. The naked caterpillars sometimes live gregariously in webs. They pupate in a cocoon.

- 39b. Setae heavy, almost always spinulose; with conspicuous tubercles. ....40

- 40a. Tubercle iii of abdomen with 2 setae.

- Fig. 469. ....Subfamily Lithosiinae, ARCTIIDAE



Fig. 469. *Oenistis quadra*.

The caterpillars possess tufted hairs which are much reduced in the last instar. This subfamily includes about 50 North American species. The caterpillars feed upon lichens.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

40b. Tubercle iii of abdomen with 1 seta.

Fig. 470. ....(*Utethesia*) Family ARCTIIDAE



Fig. 470. Fall webworm, *Hyphantria cunea* (Drury). (U.S.D.A.)

The caterpillars of this family are covered with dense tufted hairs often reddish-brown and black. When disturbed they often curl into a compact mass and are called woolly bears or hedge hog caterpillars. The cocoons are made of silk and the no-longer-needed body hairs. They feed upon a wide variety of plants. The fall webworm, *Hyphantria cunea* (Drury) lives gregariously in webs.

41a. Less than 4 pairs of abdominal prolegs; sometimes anal prolegs reduced. Fig. 471. ....Family GEOMETRIDAE



Fig. 471. *Paleocrita vernata* Peck.

About 2,000 species have been described. The caterpillars are called loopers, measuring worms, or spanworms because of their methods of locomotion. They feed chiefly on living plants but a few are able to subsist upon dry vegetable matter.

41b. 4 pairs of abdominal prolegs or more. ....42

42a. Crochets on prolegs uniordinal.

Fig. 472. ....43

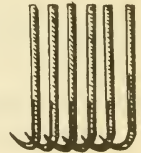


Fig. 472. Uniordinal crochets.

42b. Crochets on prolegs biordinal or triordinal. Fig. 473. ....52

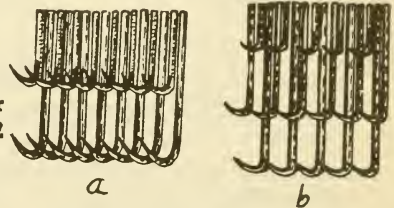


Fig. 473. a, Biordinal crochets; b, triordinal crochets.

43a. Warts rudimentary or absent, or obscured by secondary hairs...44

43b. At least wart vi (subventral) many haired and distinct; secondary hairs sparse or absent above prolegs. ....49

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 44a. Anal plate bifurcated; head roughly papillose; 3rd ocellus very large. Fig. 474. ....Family SATYRIDAE

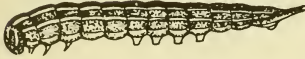


Fig. 474. *Oeneis macounii* Edw.

About 60 described species are recorded in North America. The caterpillars chiefly live on grasses and cereals. The rice butterfly, *Melanitis leda* (L.), is a pest of rice, barley, bamboo and sugar cane in Asia.

- 44b. Anal plate simple; head smoother; 3rd ocellus rarely much enlarged. ....45

- 45a. Spiracles elliptical, larger; prolegs short. ....46

- 45b. Spiracles circular, small; prolegs slender, more or less stem-like, with expanded planta. Fig. 475. ....Family PTEROPHORIDAE

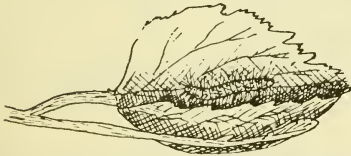


Fig. 475. Grape-vine plume. *Oxytilus periselidactylus* Fitch.

More than 350 species have been described. Most larvae are stem borers and leaf rollers. Some are of economic importance as pests of ornamental plants and agricultural crops. The adults are the plume moths so named because of their finely split wings.

- 46a. Body with dense secondary setae. Fig. 476. ....47

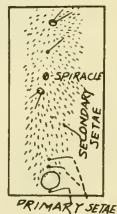


Fig. 476. A body segment showing the primary setae and secondary setae.

- 46b. Secondary setae very sparse or absent above prolegs; with simple setae or a few subprimaries. ....48

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 47a. Notch of labrum deep, with parallel sides; anal prolegs as large as others; with warts, more or less overshadowed by the secondary hairs. Fig. 477. ....A few NOCTUIDAE

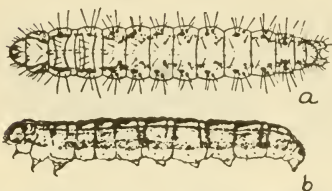


Fig. 477. a, Corn earworm *Heliothis armigera* (Hbn.); b, cutworm, *Euxoa auxiliaris* Grote. (U.S.D.A.)

This family of owlet moths is an exceedingly important one, economically. Cutworms hide in the earth of gardens, cultivated fields, etc., by day and come out at night to cut off young plants at ground level. The corn earworm not only causes heavy loss by feeding at the tips of the maturing ears of corn but also tunnels into tomatoes.

- 47b. Notch of labrum acute, with convergent sides; anal prolegs much reduced and not used; warts rudimentary and dominated by a single hair (*Melalopha*) or absent (*Datana*).

Fig. 478. ....Family NOTODONTIDAE



Fig. 478. Yellow-necked caterpillar, *Datana ministra* (Drury).

These caterpillars are gregarious, and pose often with the anterior and posterior ends raised into the air and attached only by median prolegs. They frequently possess dorsal humps or tubercles on the body and are often brightly colored. Their chief feed is the leaves of deciduous trees.

- 48a. Tubercle iv at about the same level on abdominal segments 6th, 7th and 8th. Fig. 479. ....(Doa) Family LYMANTRIIDAE



Fig. 479. *Hemerocampa vetusta* Bdv.

This family includes many destructive species. The gypsy moth, *Porthetria dispar* (L.) and the brown-tail moth, *Nygmia phaeorrhoea* (Donovan) may occur in such large number as to completely overrun and defoliate large areas of trees.

- 48b. Tubercle iv of 7th abdominal segment much lower than on other segments; anal prolegs more or less reduced or modified.

Fig. 480. ....Most NOTODONTIDAE



Fig. 480. *Cerura vinula* (L.)

The caterpillar here pictured is a "puss moth". They never fail to attract attention. The backward projecting parts are anal tubes. This species feeds on the leaves of the willow family.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 49a. With eversible mid-dorsal glands on 2nd abdominal segment.  
 Fig. 481. ....Family LYMANTRIIDAE

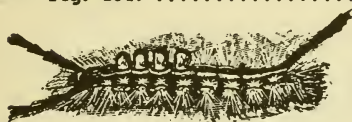


Fig. 481. *Notolophus antique* L.  
 (U.S.D.A.)

The caterpillars of this comparatively small family are usually clothed with long hair-like scales which are often sting producing. They feed on the foliage of forest trees.

- 49b. No eversible mid-dorsal glands. ....50  
 50a. Spiracles circular, small. ....Family PTEROPHORIDAE  
 50b. Spiracles elliptical, normal in size. ....51

- 51a. Wart or seta iv much lower on 7th abdominal segment, or absent.

Fig. 482. ....Family NOCTUIDAE

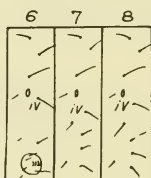


Fig. 482. Setal map of 6th, 7th and 8th abdominal segments.

- 51b. Wart or seta iv about the level on 7th abdominal segment as on the 6th and 8th. ....Family ARCTIIDAE

- 52a. Body without noticeable secondary hairs; with not more than 8 hairs on each proleg. ....(*Ethmia*) Family ETHMIIDAE

- 52b. Body with numerous secondary hairs, at least on the prolegs. .53

- 53a. Setae very irregular in length, some ten times as long as the others; with obscure warts, at least in the earlier stages; sometimes provided with scale-like hairs.

Fig. 483. ....Family LASIOCAMPIDAE

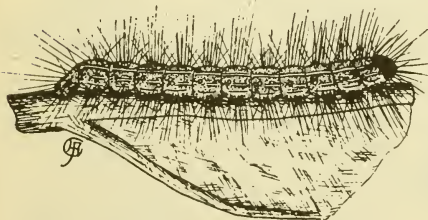


Fig. 483. *Malacosoma americana*  
 Fab.

About 1,355 species have been scribed. The caterpillars possess long hairs and are brightly colored. They live in forested areas and orchards and feed on the foliage of various trees. The tent caterpillars, *Malacosoma* spp. occur in large numbers and lie in webs. The Syrian silkworm, *Pachypasa otus* Drury belonging here was reared

for its silk by the Greeks and Romans.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 53b. Setae subequal or sometimes with setae and prominent warts and spines. ....54
- 54a. 8th abdominal segment with a dorsal horn, or plate, or tubercle. ....55
- 54b. 8th abdominal segment without a dorsal horn, or plate, or tubercle. ....58
- 55a. Body with numerous branching spines or enlarged tubercles....56
- 55b. Body with at most 2 pairs of small spines on thorax. ....57
- 56a. Head angulated or spined dorsally, or abdomen with several mid-dorsal spines; crochets of prolegs usually triordinal.  
Fig. 484. ....Family NYMPHALIDAE

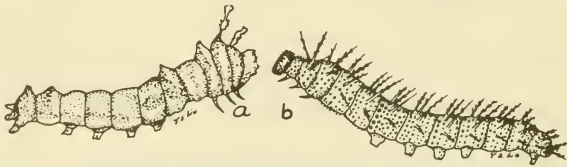


Fig. 484. a, *Basilarchia astyanax* Fab.; b, *Vanessa antiopa*.

About 4,000 species have been described. The caterpillars are usually spiny but some are naked. The chrysalises are suspended by the cremaster and the head is held downwards. They are often marked with silver or gold ornamentations. The adults are butterflies.

- 56b. Head rounded; crochets biordinal.  
Fig 485. ....Family SATURNIDAE

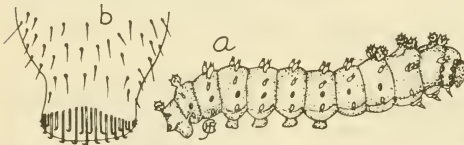


Fig. 485. a, *Samia cecropia* L.; b, a proleg with crochets.

The caterpillars chiefly feed on broad-leaved deciduous and evergreen trees. They are called giant or wild silkworms. No less than 30 species in oriental Asia are able to produce usable silk.

- 57a. Segments with 6 or 8 annulets; prolegs not widely separated.  
Fig. 486. ....Family SPHINGIDAE



Fig. 486. Tobacco hornworm, *Protoperce sexta* (Johanssen).

About 900 species have been described. The caterpillars are called hornworms because of the presence of a horn-like process on the 8th abdominal segment. Some larvae assume grotesque attitudes which are thought to be responsible for the name "sphinx moth" or "sphinx caterpillar".



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 57b. Segments with 2 or 3 obscure annulets; prolegs widely separated.  
 Fig. 487. ....Family BOMBYCIDAE



Fig. 487. Chinese silkworm, *Bombyx mori* L.

The Chinese silkworm, *Bombyx mori* L. is an important beneficial insect which has been domesticated for more than 2,000 years. It was estimated about 70 million pounds of raw silk are produced each year.

- 58a. Head elevated, triangular .....(*Lapara*) Family SPHINGIDAE

- 58b. Head not so. ....59

- 59a. Crochets on prolegs forming an ellipse, at most narrowly interrupted. Fig. 488. ....Family HESPERIIDAE



Fig. 488. *Epargyreus tityrus* Fab.

About 3,000 species have been described. The head of the caterpillars is much larger than its prothorax which forms a narrow "neck" and makes them readily recognized. Its body is widest at middle and tapering toward both ends. They live exposed on plants or within rolled and webbed leaves. They feed chiefly on cereals and grasses. The adults are known as skippers.

- 59b. Crochets arranged in one band, occasionally interrupted, or rarely forming 2 separated bands. ....60

- 60a. Bands of crochets on prolegs reduced or interrupted at middle and with a narrow spatulate, freshly lobe arising near the interruption. Fig. 489. ....Family LYCAENIDAE

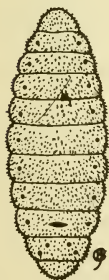


Fig. 489. Lycaenid larva.

The caterpillars are largely phytophagous and often found on leguminous plants. Some are predacious and feed on scale-insects and other homopterous nymphs. A few are myrmecophilous. The body is short and broad, slug-like and the head is smaller and narrower than the body.

- 60b. Prolegs with band of crochets continuous, without a fleshy lobe near the middle. ....61

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

61a. Dorsum of prothorax bearing an eversible, forked scent gland. When the gland is retracted a transverse groove is revealed: body not hairy or spiny, but sometimes with fleshy filaments.

Fig. 490. ....Family PAPILIONIDAE

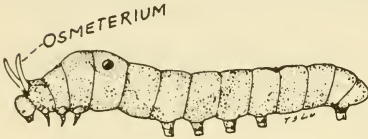


Fig. 490. *Papilio cressphontes* Cramer.

About 800 species have been described. The caterpillars feed on a number of plants, but chiefly on *Citrus* and *Umbelliferae*. The thorax of the larva is usually enlarged, and sometimes possesses two eyespots. A protrusible scent gland on the dorsum which is called osmeterium— is often present and is ejected when the caterpillar is disturbed. The adults are the swallowtail butterflies.

61b. Not as 61a. ....62

62a. Head and body entirely without spines, high tubercles, or fleshy filaments. ....63

62b. Body with spines, high tubercles, or fleshy filaments. ....65

63a. Anal plate entire, rounded. ....64

63b. Anal plate bifurcate at tip, bearing 2 distinct processes.  
.....Family SATYRIDAE

64a. Head apparently larger than prothorax. ..Family NYMPHALIDAE

64b. Head smaller than prothorax. Fig. 491. ....Family PIERIDAE



Fig. 491. Cabbageworm, *Pieris rapae* (L.)

About 1,000 species have been described. The caterpillars feed on many kinds of plants but are especially fond of cabbages and other cruciferous crops. The cabbage butterfly, *Pieris rapae* (L.) is a cosmopolitan species and the rape butterfly, *Pieris napi* (L.) is also common to both Europe and North America.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 65a. Mesothorax and sometimes several other segments bearing fleshy filaments. Fig. 492. ....Family DANAIDAE

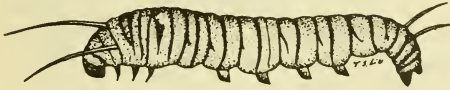


Fig. 492. *Danaus plexippus* L.

The caterpillars chiefly feed on milkweeds. The monarch butterfly, *Danaus plexippus* (L.) is nearly a cosmopolitan species. Its caterpillar is black and yellow. The chrysalis is pale green and iridescent.

- 65b. Body without fleshy filaments. ....Family NYMPHALIDAE

**Key to the PUPAE of the more important families of LEPIDOPTERA**

(Chiefly from E. Mosher, 1916)

- 1a. With functional mandibles crossing in front of head.

Fig. 493. ....Families MICROPTERYGIDAE & ERIOCRANIIDAE

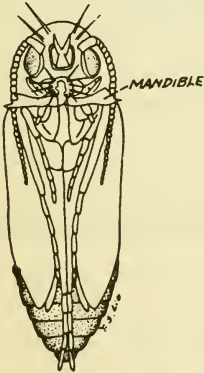


Fig. 493. *Mnemonica auricyanea* Wism.

The pupation of Micropterygidae takes place in a dense, parchment-like cocoon. The pupation of Eriocraniidae takes place in a tough cocoon in the ground. The pupa uses its large mandibles to cut its way out of the cocoon and to dig up to the surface.

- 1b. Without functional mandibles, or indicated only as small tubercles or lobes. ....2
- 2a. 4th abdominal segment movable on the 3rd; or appendages free from each other. ....3
- 2b. 4th abdominal segment fixed to 3rd; appendages fused to each other. ....19

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3a. Maxillary palpi present, separated from maxillae by a suture.

Fig. 494. ....4

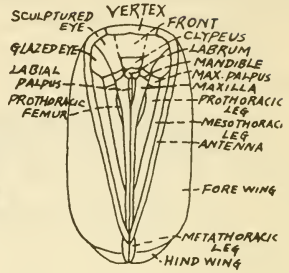


Fig. 494. Cephalic aspect of head and thorax.

3b. Maxillary palpi absent. ....11

4a. Dorsum of abdomen provided with fine spines, but not arranged in rows. ....5

4b. The anterior edge of some abdominal segments covered with a row of spines, sometimes with a second posterior row of spines. ....7

5a. Maxillary palpi extending as a band along posterior margin of eyes. (See Fig. 497). ....6

5b. Maxillary palpi not extending along posterior margin of eyes. Fig. 495. ....A few GRACILARIIDAE

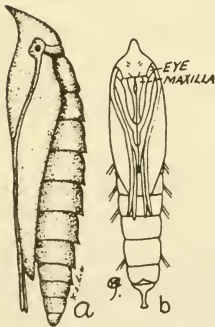


Fig. 495. a, *Lithocolletis hamadryadella* Clemens; b, *Lithocolletis argentinotella* Clemens ♀.

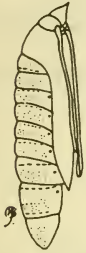
Hibernation takes place either in adult stage or in pupal stage. When in pupal stage, the adult is well developed inside.

More than 200 species of the genus pictured are known. Many of them are highly economic.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

6a. Spiracles of 1st abdominal segment covered by wings.

Fig. 496. . . . . Family INCURVARIIDAE

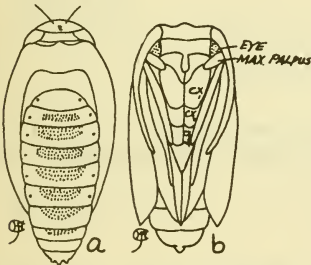


Pupation takes place in a silken cocoon at the mouth of the larval burrow.

Fig. 496. *Prodoxus quinquepunctellus* Cham.

6b. Spiracles of 1st abdominal segment exposed.

Fig. 497. . . . . Family NEPTICULIDAE



When the larva is full-grown it drops to the ground and spins a dense, flattened silken cocoon within the rubbish or on the surface of the soil.

Fig. 497. *Nepticula platanele* Clemens ♂: a, dorsal aspect; b, ventral aspect.

7a. Middle abdominal segments, each with 2 rows of spines. . . . . 8

7b. Middle abdominal segments, each with 1 row of spines. . . . . 10

8a. Cremaster absent, or indicated only by a tuft of spines; anal rise without spines. Fig. 498. . . . . Family AEGERIIDAE



Pupation takes place in the tunnel which is made by the larva.

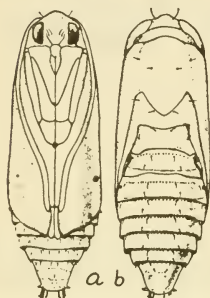
This is a comparatively small family. The species pictured lives on lilac and ash.

Fig. 498. *Podosesia syringae* (Harr.) ♀.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 8b. Cremaster well developed, forming a definite process; or anal rise with spines. ....9
- 9a. Last abdominal segment with a group of angular nodules.  
.....Family PHALONIIDAE
- 9b. Last abdominal segment with setae only.  
Fig. 499. ....Family TORTRICIDAE



Pupation takes place in rolled leaves or on the bark of the host plant. Some spin cocoons which are attached to other objects or put within debris.

Fig. 499. *Laspeyresia interstinctana* Clemens: a, dorsal aspect; b, ventral aspect. (U.S.D.A.)

- 10a. Notum of mesothorax prolonged into a long lobe.

Fig. 500. ....Family GLYPHIPTERYGIDAE



The information of the pupae of this family is very limited.

Fig. 500. *Anthopila pariana* Clerk.

- 10b. Notum of mesothorax not prolonged into a long lobe.

Fig. 501. ....Family TINEIDAE

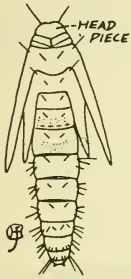


Pupation takes place in a silken cocoon or larval case.

Fig. 501. *Tinea pellionella* (L.)♂

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 11a. Dorsal head-piece much longer than the prothorax.  
(See Fig. 502). . . . . 12
- 11b. Dorsal head-piece not longer than the prothorax. . . . . 15
- 12a. 4th abdominal segment free from 3rd; antennae and hind legs  
not in subequal length. . . . . 13
- 12b. 4th abdominal segment rigidly fastened to 3rd; antennae and  
hind legs subequal in length. . . . . 14
- 13a. Labial palpi visible. Fig. 502. . . . . Family TISCHERIIDAE



The early stages are leaf-miners. Pupation takes place in the Spring in the larval mine.

Fig. 502. *Tischeria malifoliella* Clemens. ♀

- 13b. Labial palpi invisible. Fig. 503. . . . . Family LYONETIIDAE



Fig. 503. *Lyonetia speculella* Clemens.

Pupation takes place in a cocoon which formed on the leaf under two bands of silk, or is sometimes naked and suspended by a few silk threads to a bent leaf.

- 14a. 3rd to 7th abdominal segments each with 2 deep punctures at  
the anterior margin near the mid-dorsal line; 7th longer than 8th  
to 10th together. . . . . (*Phyllocnistis*) LYONETIIDAE
- 14b. Not so. . . . . Family GRACILARIIDAE
- 15a. Cremaster with a distinct stem. . . . . (*Peronea*) TORTRICIDAE
- 15b. Cremaster without a stem, its hooks attached to body. . . . . 16
- 16a. 1st abdominal spiracles invisible; dorsal spines or setae arranged  
in transverse rows. . . . . 17

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 16b. 1st abdominal spiracles visible; dorsal spines or setae irregular.  
 Fig. 504. ....Family LIMACODIDAE



Fig. 504. *Euclea chloris*. ♀.

Pupation takes place in a smooth silken cocoon which is attached to the host plant.

- 17a. Mesothorax less than twice as long as metathorax; maxillae quadrangular, widely separated. Fig. 505. ..Family HEPIALIDAE

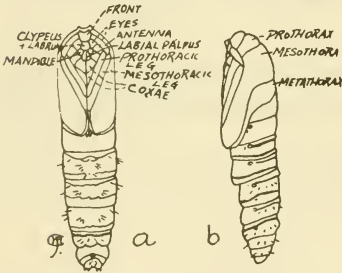


Fig. 505. *Sthenopsis thule* Stkr.  
 a, ventral aspect; b, lateral aspect.

The pupa is slender, fitting the larval burrow. Its mandibles are rudimentary, but sharply defined. Before emergence, the pupa leaves the larval burrow.

- 17b. Mesothorax more than twice as long as metathorax; maxillae longitudinal. ....18

- 18a. 3rd abdominal segment movable on 2nd; abdominal segments with an anterior row of spines and a posterior row of setae.

- Fig. 506. ....Family PSYCHIDAE



Fig. 506. *Thyridopteryx ephemeraeformis* Haworth.

The pupation takes place in the larval bag attaching to the host plant. The species pictured is the most common one of its family in our country. The family is a fairly large one.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

18b. 3rd abdominal segment fixed on 2nd; abdominal segments with both rows of spines. Fig. 507. ....Family COSSIDAE



The pupal stage passes in the burrow which was made by the larva.

This, our most important species, was introduced from Europe and infests many species of trees.

Fig. 507. Leopard moth, *Zeuzera pyrina* L. ♂

19a. Labrum with 3 lobes (pilifers distinct).  
Fig. 508. ....20



Fig. 508. Anterior part of pupa.

19b. Labrum simple or bilobed (pilifers absent). ....28

20a. Maxillary palpi present. (See Fig. 509). ....21

20b. Maxillary palpi wanting. ....22

21a. Epicranial suture wanting; no deep dorsal groove between 9th and 10th abdominal segments; 8th abdominal segment free on 7th in male. ....(*Atteva*) YPONOMEUTIDAE

21b. Epicranial suture distinct at sides; or with a deep dorsal groove between 9th and 10th abdominal segments; 8th abdominal segment fixed on 7th in both sexes. Fig. 509. ..Family PYRALIDIDAE

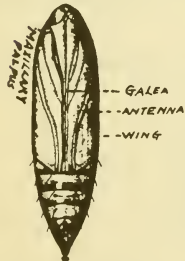


Fig. 509. European corn borer, *Pyrausta nubilalis* (Hubner)

Pupation takes place in various ways: some spin cocoons in dead leaves or under rubbish. The aquatic species spend their pupal stage in a cocoon beneath the surface of the water.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

22a. With a deep dorsal groove between 9th and 10th abdominal segments. . . . . Subfamily Epipaschiinae, PYRALIDIDAE

22b. Not so. . . . . 23

23a. Prothoracic femur exposed; antennae not swollen.

Fig. 510. . . . . Family PTEROPHORIDAE



Pupae usually suspend themselves by their tail on the host plant.

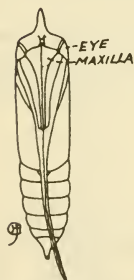
They are often spiny. The adults have divided wings.

Fig. 510. *Pterophorus tenuidactylus* Fitch.

23b. Prothoracic femur concealed; antennae swollen. . . . . 24

24a. Maxillae in contact with eyes; tip of mouth parts beyond tip of wings; pupa usually in a cocoon.

Fig. 511. . . . . Family HESPERIIDAE



Pupa is rounded, suspended by a Y-shaped girth in a cocoon.

This family has some 3000 known species some of which are economic.

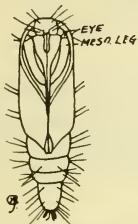
Fig. 511. *Calpodex ethlius* Cr.

24b. Maxillae separated from eyes; tip of mouth parts not beyond tip of wings; pupa usually exposed. . . . . 25



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

25a. Pupa normally exposed, rarely in cocoon; mesothoracic legs reaching forward to eyes. Fig. 512. . . . .Family NYMPHALIDAE



Pupa suspended by the tail or in a girded thin cocoon. They are sometimes dull colored but are often marked with silver or gold.

Fig. 512. *Brenthia pavonacella* Clemens. ♀ .

25b. Pupa normally girded at middle, rarely in cocoon; mesothoracic legs not reaching forward to eyes. . . . .26

26a. Body rounded; mouth parts not reaching the tip of wings. Fig. 513. . . . .Family LYCAENIDAE



The body of pupa is short, rounded and closely girded. It is usually smooth and small. Our smallest butterflies belong to this family.

Fig. 513. *Lycaenopsis ladon*.

26b. Body elongate; mouth parts reaching the tip of wings. . . . .27

27a. Anterior end of pupa with 2 points. Fig. 514. . . . .Family PAPILIONIDAE



Pupa loosely girded and with two points at the anterior end.

Most of the members of the family pass the winter in this stage.

Fig. 514. *Papilio cresphontes* Cramer.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

27b. Anterior end of pupa with 1 point.

Fig. 515. ....Family PIERIDAE



The shape of pupa is angular ending in a single spine and is girded loosely. Many species go through several generations a year, making the pupal stage very short.

Fig. 515. *Callidryas eubule*.

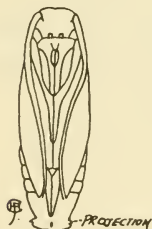
28a. Tip of fore wings far beyond the posterior edge of the 4th abdominal segment; prothoracic femur exposed. ....29

28b. Tip of fore wings not beyond the posterior edge of the 4th abdominal segment; prothoracic femur concealed. ....31

29a. Maxillary and labial palpi concealed; pupa without movable segments. ....Family LYONETIIDAE

29b. Maxillary and labial palpi exposed; with several movable abdominal segments. ....30

30a. Caudal end of abdomen with lateral projections; maxillary palpi wanting. Fig. 516. ....Family COLEOPHORIDAE



Pupation takes place in the larval case ordinarily fastened on the host plant.

Fig. 516. *Coleophora malivorella* Riley.

30b. Caudal end of abdomen without lateral projections; maxillary palpi present. Fig. 517. ....Family YPONOMEUTIDAE



Pupation takes place in a cocoon which is spindle-shaped and suspended in its larval web.

Fig. 517. *Scythris eboracensis* Zeller.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 31a. Fore wings usually extending beyond 4th abdominal segment; if not, then the body depressed, antennae adjacent on the middle; first 4 abdominal segments usually longer than the remainder; epicranial suture always present. ....32
- 31b. Fore wings not extending beyond 4th abdominal segment; if beyond, then the maxillary palpi never present; first 4 abdominal segments rarely longer than the remainder; epicranial suture rarely visible. ....36
- 32a. Antennae 4/5 as long as fore wings, meeting only at apex; labial palpi distinct. ....(*Scythris*) YPONOMEUTIDAE
- 32b. Antennae reaching almost to the tip of wings, meeting at middle and sometimes diverging at apex; labial palpi usually concealed. ....33
- 33a. Antennae not diverging at apex. ....34
- 33b. Antennae diverging at apex. ....35

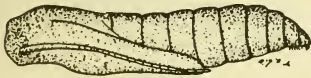


Fig. 518. *Depressaria heracliana* De Geer.

34a. Prothoracic legs longer than mouth parts.

Fig. 518. ....(*Ethmia*) ETHMIIDAE

- 34b. Prothoracic legs shorter than mouth parts. ..A few GELECHIIDAE
- 35a. Fronto-clypeal suture complete. Fig. 519. ..Family GELECHIIDAE

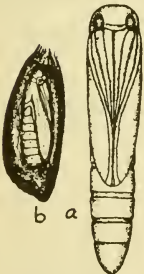


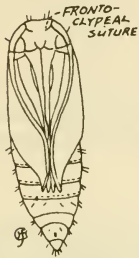
Fig. 519. a, Spruce leaf-miner, *Recurvaria piceaella* Kearf; b, *Sitotroga cerealella* Oliv. (U.S.D.A.)

Pupation takes place in a silken cocoon. The family is a large one with several thousand species and numerous genera. The several species of *Recurvaria* mine within the needles of the conifers. The other species pictured is a widely distributed pest of stored grain, feeding and pupating within the grains.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

35b. Fronto-clypeal suture obsolete in middle.

Fig. 520. ....Family OECOPHORIDAE



Pupation takes place in hollow stem, or larval web, or folded leaves, varying differently with the larval habits.

The larvae are often case makers.

Fig. 520. *Cryptotelechia quercicella* Clemens.

36a. Labial palpi exposed, lanceolate. ....37

36b. Labial palpi invisible or reduced to a small area.....41

37a. Body with secondary setae (often minute), not arranged around larval warts. Fig. 521. ....Family LASIOCAMPIDAE

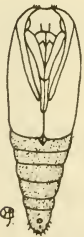


Fig. 521. *Malacosoma disstria*. Hubner.

Pupation takes place in a silken cocoon hidden in debris or other objects. Both the pupae and the eggs have a smooth exterior. The nearly 30 members of this genus do serious damage to trees.

37b. Body with primary setae only, or with setae around larval warts. ....38

38a. Prothoracic femur exposed. ....39

38b. Prothoracic femur concealed. ....40

39a. Tip of abdomen with a group of pyramidal points, setae obscure; mesothoracic legs touching maxillary palpi; 5th abdominal segment without special ridge. ....(*Diatraea*) PYRALIDIDAE

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 39b. Tip of abdomen with a cremaster or hooked cremastral setae; mesothoracic legs not touching maxillary palpi; 5th abdominal segment with a special ridge. Fig. 522. . . . .Family NOCTUIDAE

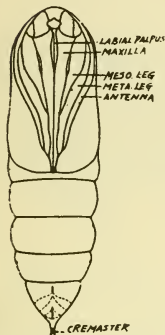


Fig. 522. *Papaipema nebris* Gn. ♀

The pupal stage passes in various ways: some make loose cocoons in leaves, some enter the soil for pupation, many pupate under debris on the surface of the ground.

The more than 20,000 species of this great family vary so widely in size and habits that anything said about the family must be of a general nature. Many of the species are highly economic and some of the most destructive plant pests fall in this group. Any collecting trip is likely to turn up some of their pupae.

- 40a. The scars of larval warts with setae not arranged in circles. . . . .Family NOCTUIDAE

- 40b. The scars of larval with setae arranged in circles. Fig. 523. . . . .Family LYMANTRIIDAE



Fig. 523. *Hemerocampa leucostigma* S. & A.

Pupation takes place in a silken cocoon which is sometimes mixed with body setae.

The pupae of the white marked tussock moth, here taken as an example of the family, are easily located since they are often wrapped in a dead leaf attached to the tree or other food plant. The wingless female after emergence and fertilization usually deposits her eggs upon the cocoon and covers them with a white coat which is weatherproof but which makes the whole assembly more conspicuous.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

41a. Maxillary palpi present; on thorax and base of abdomen with a crest; cremaster present.

Fig. 524. ....Subfamily Galleriinae, PYRALIDIDAE

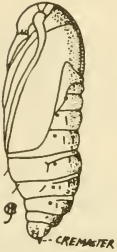


Fig. 524. Wax moth, *Galleria mellonella* (L.) ♂

The caterpillars live ordinarily in the nests of bees and wasps. The bee moths or waxworms sometimes do serious damages in beehives. The pupae have well-marked appendages and are enclosed within a thick, tough cocoon.

41b. Not as 41a. ....42

42a. Antennae club-shaped; cremaster wanting.  
.....(*Oeneis*) NYMPHALIDAE

42b. Antennae not club-shaped; if so, cremaster present. ....43

43a. The larval warts with setae arranged in circles. ....44

43b. The larval warts with setae arranged not in circles. ....46

44a. Antennae reaching beyond the half of fore wings. ....45

44b. Antennae reaching less than half of fore wings.  
.....A few LYMANTRIIDAE

45a. Cremaster as long as 9th and 10th abdominal segments together; with hooked setae. ....Subfamily Pantheinae, NOCTUIDAE

45b. Cremaster if present, then abdomen with flanged plates.  
Fig. 525. ....Family ARCTIIDAE

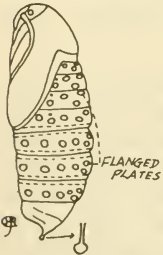


Fig. 525. *Isia isabella* S. G. A.

The cocoon is usually formed by coarse silk and larval body hairs. The pupation takes place mostly under leaves or within debris on the ground.

The pupa shown here comes from the very common brick-red and black "banded woolly bear" caterpillar so much in evidence in the Fall.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 46a. Body with secondary setae. .... 47  
 46b. Body with primary setae or none. .... 48  
 47a. Body with rather coarse, short secondary setae; cremaster rudimentary. Fig. 526. .... Family BOMBYCIDAE



Fig. 526. *Bombyx mori* L.

Pupation takes place in white or yellow thick silken cocoon. The Chinese silkworm yields 70 million pounds of raw silk annually.

- 47b. Body with fine, soft secondary setae; cremaster well developed. Fig. 527. .... Family NOTODONTIDAE

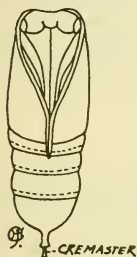


Fig. 527. *Phryganidia californica* Pack.

The pupa is often naked and protected by an earthen cell. Other species spin a scanty cocoon which frequently contains some of the debris in which it is placed.

- 48a. Antennae not pectinate; spiracular furrows often present; fronto-clypeal suture distinct at ends. .... 49  
 48b. Antennae pectinate; spiracular furrows rarely present; fronto-clypeal suture wanting. Fig. 528. .... Family SATURNIIDAE

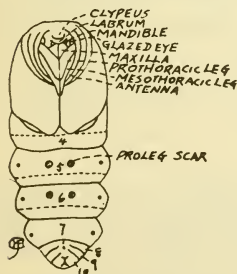


Fig. 528. *Samia cecropia* L.

Pupation takes place in dense silken cocoons which have been utilized for silk by man.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 49a. Antennae usually filiform, the greatest width rarely greater than that of the prothoracic legs, if greater, then cremaster always present; antennae never more than  $\frac{3}{4}$  the length of wings; epicranial suture always wanting; scar of dorsal horn of 8th abdominal segment usually present; labial palpi never visible.

Fig. 529. ....Family SPHINGIDAE



Fig. 529. Tobacco hornworm, *Protoparce sexta* (Johansen).

Pupation takes place in the ground in an earthen cell which is made by the soil and the body fluid. A few species pupate on the surface of the ground in a simple cocoon composed of leaves fastened with silk.

- 49b. Antennae usually broader near the proximal end, their greatest width usually greater than that of the prothoracic legs; antennae usually more than  $\frac{3}{4}$  length of wings, if not, then epicranial suture is present, or the cremaster is wanting, or if present then bifurcate at the distal end or bearing hooked setae; dorsum of abdomen usually with a deep groove between 9th and 10th abdominal segments; scar of dorsal horn of 8th abdominal segment never present; labial palpi sometimes visible. .... 50

- 50a. Maxillae usually more than  $\frac{3}{5}$  length of wings; if not, then the caudal end of body with hooked setae, or 3rd abdominal spiracle concealed by wings; prothoracic femur often exposed; a deep furrow usually present on the dorsum of abdomen between the 9th and 10th segments. Fig. 530. ....Family GEOMETRIDAE



Fig. 530. *Brephos infans* Moesch.

Pupation takes place in the soil with or without a silken cocoon.

This rather large family includes some 2,000 species, many of which are well known.

- 50b. Maxillae seldom more than  $\frac{3}{5}$  length of wings; if so, then the posterior margin of mesothorax with a row of deep pits or entire body punctate; 3rd abdominal spiracle never concealed by wings; prothoracic femur never exposed; cremaster T-shaped.

.. ....Family NOTODONTIDAE

ORDER DIPTERA

Key to the LARVAE of the more important families

(After John R. Malloch, 1917)

1a. Mandibles moving horizontally; head complete, if not, the posterior portion with deep longitudinal incisions, or the thorax and abdomen together consisting of 13 segments. Fig. 531.

.....Suborder ORTHORRHAPHA,  
series NEMATOCERA.....3



Fig. 531. Head of *Culex* sp.

1b. Mandibles moving vertically; head incomplete, without a strongly developed upper arcuate plate. Fig. 532. ....2



Fig. 532. Anterior part of body, showing the mandibles.

2a. Maxillae well developed, palpi distinct; mandibles normally sickle-like; antennae well developed on the upper surface of a slightly arcuate sclerotized dorsal plate. Fig. 533.

Suborder ORTHORRHAPHA,  
series BRACHYCERA.....16

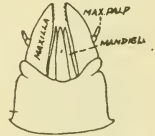


Fig. 533. Dorsal aspect of head.

2b. Maxillae poorly developed, palpi visible only in a few larvae; mandibles short and hook-like; antennae poorly developed or absent, when present situated upon a membranous surface.

Fig. 534. ....Suborder CYCLORRHAPHA\*

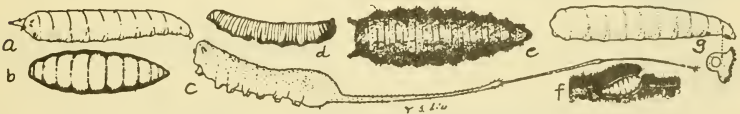


Fig. 534. a, *Drosophila melanogaster* Meigen (Calif. Exp. Sta.); b, Hessian fly, *Phytophaga destructor* (Say) (U.S.D.A.); c, *Eristalis bastardi* Macq.; d, *Toxomerus politus* Say; e, *Leucopis griseola* Fall (U.S.D.A.); f, Common cattle grub, *Hypoderma lineatum* De Vill) in host skin (U.S.D.A.); g, Mediterranean fruit fly, *Ceratitis capitata* (Wied.) with an anterior respiratory organ (Calif. Exp. Sta.).

\*Key to families is not available.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3a. Head incomplete; thorax and abdomen combined consisting of 13 segments; larvae peripneustic; usually with a sclerotized plate on ventral surface of mesothorax. Fig. 535. . . Family CECIDOMYIDAE

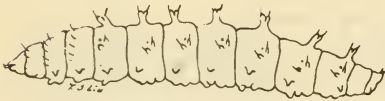


Fig. 535. *Retinodiplosis inops* O. S.

The larvae are mostly gall-makers, but some are predacious on scale-insects and others live in decaying organic matter. The Hessian fly, *Phytophaga destructor* (Say) is a serious pest of wheat. The larvae live and feed on the stem beneath the leaf sheaths, where pupation also takes place.

3b. Not so. . . . . 4

4a. Head and thorax and 1st and 2nd abdominal segments fused; larvae with minute abdominal spiracles; abdomen with a ventral longitudinal series of sucker-like discs.

Fig. 536. . . . . Family BLEPHAROCERATIDAE



Fig. 536. *Bibiocephala* sp.

The adults are called net-winged midges. The larvae live in swift-flowing streams and feed on algae and diatoms. They may be found clinging to the rocks. Pupation takes place in the water.

4b. Head free, or if retracted within or fused with prothorax the other thoracic segments are distinct. . . . . 5

5a. Head complete; mandibles opposed. . . . . 6



- 5b. Head incomplete posteriorly, either with 3 deep wedge-shaped slits (2 on dorsum and 1 on venter), or ventral surface very poorly sclerotized and the dorsal one posteriorly in the form of 4 slender heavily sclerotized rods, with a weakly sclerotized divided plate on anterior half of the dorsum. Fig. 537. . . . . Family TIPULIDAE

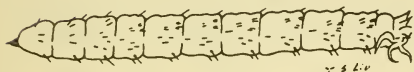


Fig. 537. *Tipula eluta* Loew.

There are about 6,000 species of crane flies described. The larvae are commonly called leather jackets. They are aquatic, semiaquatic, and some are terrestrial. They feed upon decaying wood, decaying vegetations, fungi, moss, and roots of many plants. A few are leaf miners.

- 5a. Thoracic segments fused and dilated, forming a complex mass. Fig. 538. . . . . Family CULICIDAE

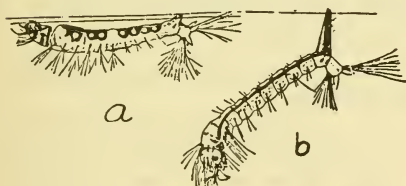


Fig. 538. a, *Anopheles* sp.; b, *Culex* sp.

Around 2,000 species of mosquitoes have been described. The larvae are aquatic and live in various types of fresh water and even in brackish and salt water. The culicine larvae rest under water surface with the body obliquely placed while the anophelines are horizontally placed. Many species of female mosquitoes are the vectors of human diseases. *Anopheles* are responsible for malaria and *Aedes* carry the causative agent of yellow fever and dengue.

- 6b. Thoracic segments distinct. . . . . 7
- 7a. Larvae peripneustic, or with at least rudimentary abdominal spiracles. . . . . 8
- 7b. Larvae amphipneustic or metapneustic. . . . . 11

8a. Larvae with rudimentary abdominal spiracles; mouth with a large articulated process on each side which bears a number of long hairs and closes, fan-like, when at rest; posterior abdominal segments dilated, the last one armed on venter with a sucker-like disc which bears concentric series of bristles; aquatic species.

Fig. 539. ....Family SIMULIIDAE



Fig. 539. a, *Simulium pictipes* Hagen; b, *S. venustum* Say; c, *S.* sp. (Utah Agr. Exp. Sta.)

About 300 species of buffalo gnats or black flies are described. The larvae live mostly in swift fresh water and congregate in masses on their webs on rocks in water. The larvae are often so abundant as to completely cover the rocks to which they are attached. The female bites and causes painful swellings. They are disease carriers.

8b. Larvae with distinct though sometimes small abdominal spiracles; mouth without fan-like processes; posterior abdominal segments not noticeably dilated, the last one without sucker-like disc; terrestrial species. ....9

9a. Antennae elongate; body armed with conspicuous bristles or hairs. ....10

9b. Antennae usually short and inconspicuous, sometimes apparently absent; body without conspicuous bristles.

Fig. 540. ....Family MYCETOPHILIDAE



Fig. 540, *Exechia nativa* Johannsen.

Around 2,000 species of the fungus gnats have been described. The larvae inhabit damp places in large numbers. They are active and able to leap. Their food is decaying vegetation and fungi. Some species are recorded as pests of mushrooms.

10a. Anal spiracles at the apices of a pair of long stalk-like processes. Fig. 541. ....Family SCATOPSIDAE

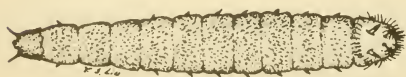


Fig. 541. *Rhexmoclema atrata* Say.

The larvae live in dung, in decaying organic matter, or under the loose bark of decaying trees. Their adults are known as dung midges, or minute black scavengers.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 10b. Anal spiracles not noticeably elevated, situated near base of dorsal surface of caudal segment.

Fig. 542. ....Family BIBIONIDAE

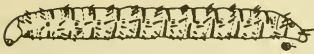


Fig. 542. *Bibio albipennis* Say.

About 500 species of the March flies have been described. The larvae live in and feed on decaying vegetable matter, dung, and the roots of grasses, cereals and vegetables. They are sometimes very abundant.

- 11a. Dorsal surface of 1st and 2nd abdominal segments each with 2 wart-like elevations. Fig. 543. ....Family DIXIDAE



Fig. 543. *Dixia* sp.

Only around 10 species have been described in the United States. The larvae are aquatic and feed on algae. The body is bent and moves by alternate thrusts of the two ends of the body, the bent portion is foremost.

- 11b. Dorsal surface of 1st and 2nd abdominal segments without elevated processes. ....12

- 12a. All or some of the dorsal segments with narrow, sclerotized strap-like transverse bands; or the apical segment in the form of a short sclerotized tube; rarely the ventral abdominal segments bear a central series of sucker-like discs.

Fig. 544. ....Family PSYCHODIDAE



Fig. 544. *Psychoda superba* Banks.

The larvae are aquatic or terrestrial and some live in drain pipes. They feed on decaying matter, dung, fungi and sewage. The adults are called sand flies or moth flies. Some sand flies are the carriers of human diseases. *Flebotomus argentipes* Annandale & Brunetti, *F. major* Annandale, *F. chinensis* Patton & Hindle are the carriers of kala azar.

- 12b. Dorsum without narrow, sclerotized, strap-like bands; apical segment not in the form of a short sclerotized tube; ventral abdominal segments never with sucker-like discs. ....13

- 13a. Antennae undeveloped, appearing as pale round spots on side of head; ventral surface of head with sclerites contiguous anteriorly, widely separated posteriorly. ...Family MYCETOPHILIDAE

- 13b. Antennae pedunculate, usually well developed; ventral surface of head with sclerites contiguous for entire length, not separated widely posteriorly. ....14
- 14a. Abdominal segments not subdivided. ....15
- 14b. Abdominal segments subdivided by means of transverse constrictions. ....Family TIPULIDAE
- 15a. (a) Aquatic larvae very slender, tapering towards both ends; without thoracic or anal pseudopods or surface hairs (except about 8 at apex of abdomen). (b) Terrestrial larvae stout, with well-defined segments which are armed with strong bristles, some of which are lanceolate; pseudopods present.

Fig. 545. ....Family CERATOPOGONIDAE



Fig. 545. *Forcipomyia specularis* Coq.

The members of this family are called biting midges, punkies, or sand flies. Their larvae are aquatic, semi-aquatic or terrestrial. The latter live in moist humus soil or under bark. The aquatic species inhabit various types of water including seashore and salt lakes. The adults suck blood from other insects and mammals. Some species are the vectors of filaria worms.

- 15b. Larvae rarely very slender, generally of an almost uniform thickness, rarely with the thoracic segments appreciable swollen but not fused; abdominal and thoracic segments frequently with rather noticeable soft hairs, the last segment almost invariably with a conspicuous tuft of hairs on dorsum near apex; pseudopods almost always present, sometimes (very rare) only the thoracic one distinguishable in terrestrial forms.

Fig. 546. ....Family CHIRONOMIDAE

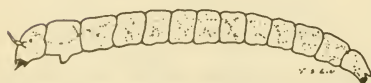


Fig. 546. *Camptocladius byssinus*.

Around 2,000 species of the midges have been described. The larvae are aquatic or terrestrial. The aquatic species live in various types of water including salt lakes and open sea. Some feed on the water surface, others make silken cases and attach to rocks or other objects on the bottom or in mud. The blood worms are red colored larvae. The terrestrial species live in dung, fungi, mosses and decaying vegetation.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 16a. Posterior spiracles approximated, situated within a terminal or subterminal cleft or chamber, usually concealed; body entirely shagreened or wholly or in part longitudinally striated. . . . . 17
- 16b. Posterior spiracles rather widely separated, visible, situated on apical segment, which may be truncated, sclerotized, or armed with apical processes; or upon penultimate or antepenultimate segment; body not shagreened or visibly striated. . . . . 18
- 17a. Head not retractile; body flattened, surface finely shagreened, sometimes with lateral abdominal spiracles, without vestigial pseudopods; spiracular fissure transverse, sometimes rather small; pupae enclosed in larval skin.

Fig. 547. . . . . Family STRATIOMYIDAE



About 1,200 species of the soldier flies have been described. Some larvae live in water and feed on decaying matter and algae or prey on small aquatic animals. Some possess a long breathing tube on the caudal end. Some live in mud, in fruit, in dung or rotting wood.

Fig. 547. *Geosargus viridas* Say.

- 17b. Head retractile; body cylindrical, surface not shagreened, usually longitudinally striated; abdomen with a girdle of pseudopods on each segment; spiracular fissure vertical; pupae free.

Fig. 548. . . . . Family TABANIDAE



Around 2,500 species of the horse flies have been described. The larvae are spindle-shaped, living in water or damp places. The flies are blood-sucking insects and biting on warm-blooded animals including man. Some of them are disease carriers.

Fig. 548. *Tabanus atratus* Fab.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 18a. Posterior spiracles situated upon apical segment. ....19
- 18b. Posterior spiracles situated upon penultimate or antepenultimate segment. ....23
- 19a. Projecting portion of head and flattened apical plate of terminal abdominal segment heavily sclerotized, the former cone-shaped, entirely closed except at extreme apex, not retractile; the latter obliquely truncate and with projecting processes.  
 Fig. 549. ....Family XYLOPHAGIDAE



Fig. 549. *Xylophagus lugens*  
Loew.

The larvae are found in the soil or under the bark of rotten trees. They feed upon the larvae of other insects.

The members of this small family are related to the better known soldier flies and to the horseflies.

- 19b. Projecting portion of head more or less retractile, not cone-shaped, the movable portion not enclosed; apical abdominal segment without a heavily sclerotized flattened terminal plate. ....20
- 20a. Apical abdominal segment ending in 2 long processes which are fringed with long soft hairs; abdomen with paired pseudopods and fleshy dorsal and lateral appendages.  
 Fig. 550. ....Family RHAGIONIDAE

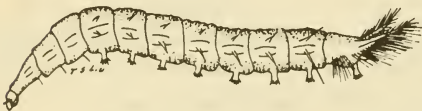


Fig. 550. *Atherix* sp.

Some larvae live in fresh water with flattened body while others live in dung, wood or fungi with cylindrical body. They are predacious and feed on small animals. Some *Vermileo* can make ant-trapping pits in dust or sand similar to those of the ant-lions. The adults are known as snipe flies.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

20b. Apical abdominal segment not as above; paired abdominal pseudopods usually absent; other appendages always absent...21

21a. Apical abdominal segment ending in 4 short pointed processes or 2 fleshy lips; internal portion of head with a large, arched, sclerotized upper plate, the longitudinal rods and other cephalic parts on a horizontal plane. ....Family RHAGIONIDAE

21b. Apical abdominal segment not as above, or the internal portion of head without arched upper plate, and the longitudinal cephalic rods and other cephalic parts meet at right angles. ....22

22a. Apical abdominal segment without projecting processes, spiracles very small; parasites of spiders.

Fig. 551. ....Family CYRTIDAE



Fig. 551. *Pterodontia flavipes*  
Grag. 1st instar.

Around 200 species of the humpbacked flies are known. The first instar larvae are caraboid in form with distinct segments and two long anal bristles. They feed on spider eggs and spiders. They change to eruciform larva which is not so active as the first instar.

22b. Apical abdominal segment frequently with projecting processes, spiracles large; species live in water, mud, earth, or decaying vegetable matter.

Fig. 552. ....Family EMPIDAE and family DOLICHOPIDAE

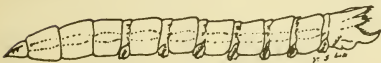


Fig. 552. *Dolichopus* sp.

Empidae: About 1,600 species of the dance flies are known. The larvae live in water or in decaying vegetation, dead wood, soil and mosses where they feed upon small animals.

Dolichopidae: About 2,000 species of the long-legged flies have been described. The larvae are mostly aquatic and feed on other insects. Some are found in plant stems or under tree bark.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 23a. Posterior spiracles situated upon the antepenultimate segment; abdominal segments 1-6 subdivided, the body apparently consisting of 20 segments exclusive of the head. ....24
- 23b. Posterior spiracles situated upon penultimate segment; abdominal segments simple, the body apparently consisting of 11 or 12 segments exclusive of the head. ....25
- 24a. Posterior dorsal internal extension of head spatulate at apex; ventral posterior projections in the form of 2 short sclerotized rods. Fig. 553. ....Family THEREVIDAE

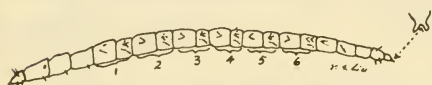


Fig. 553. *Psilocephala haemorrhoidalis* Macquart.

About 300 species have been described. The larvae frequent sandy soil, fungi and decaying wood. They feed upon earthworms and other soft-bodied insects or decaying organic matter. The adults are known as stilleto flies.

- 24b. Posterior dorsal extension of head not spatulate at apex; ventral posterior projections absent. Fig. 554. ....Family SCENOPINIDAE



Fig. 554. Ventral aspect of head of *Scenopinus fenestralis* L.

About 50 species have been described. The larvae are sometimes found in houses under carpets or in furniture and also in decaying wood. Their food habits are thought to be predacious. One species is thought to destroy the larvae of carpet beetles.

- 25a. Penultimate abdominal segment longer than ultimate, with a deep transverse depression near its apex giving it the appearance of 2 distinct segments; ultimate segment terminating in a sharp ridge with a median sharp point, on either side of which dorsally and ventrally are situated 4 very closely approximated hairs. Fig. 555. ....Family MYDAIDAE



Fig. 555. *Mydas clavatus* Drury.

Around 100 species have been described. Both adults and larvae are predacious. The larvae are found in decaying wood. The adults are known as mydas flies and are often conspicuously marked.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

25b. Penultimate abdominal segment shorter than ultimate, or if longer, then without a deep transverse depression; apical segment not as above, the hairs not closely approximated. . . . . 26

26a. Thoracic segments each with 2 long hairs, one on each side on ventro-lateral margin; apical segment with 6 or 8 long hairs; head well developed, forwardly protruded, and more or less cone-shaped when viewed from above, appearing flattened when viewed from side; penultimate segment usually shorter than ultimate or not much longer; body straight in life.

Fig. 556. . . . . Family ASILIDAE

Around 4,000 species of the robber flies have been described. The larvae inhabit soil with decaying organic matter where they prey upon other insect larvae.

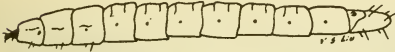


Fig. 556. *Promachus vertebratus* Say.

26b. Thoracic segments without hairs, if present, they are very weak; apical segment without distinguishable hairs; head not much protruded, directed downward, not cone-shaped, with a dorsal protuberance when viewed from side; penultimate segment distinctly longer than ultimate; body usually curved in a half circle in life.

Fig. 557. . . . . Family BOMBYLIIDAE

About 1,800 species of bee flies are known. The first instar larvae are slender and legless with hairs on thorax and anal region which disappear in the latter instars. They are predacious or parasitic on the larvae of bees and wasps, pupae of tsetse flies, caterpillars and also on the eggs of beetles and grasshoppers. Some *Hemipenthes* have been reared from ichneumonid cocoons. That would suggest that they are hyperparasitic.

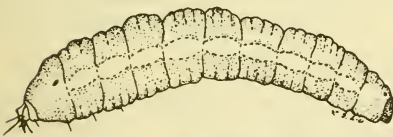


Fig. 557. *Sparnopolius fulvus* Wied.

## Key to the PUPAE of the more important families of DIPTERA

(After John R. Malloch, 1917)

1a. Pupa not enclosed within the larval skin, if so, the head is distinct as in the larva, or the puparium is slightly flattened dorso-ventrally, its texture leathery, not sclerotized, and the anterior respiratory organs not distinguishable; adult or pupa emerges through a rectangular split on dorsum of larval skin.

Suborder ORTHORRHAPHA . . . . . 2



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 1b. Pupa enclosed with the larval skin; head always retracted, the sclerotized portion occupying a position on the inner side of the ventral surface of the puparium; anterior respiratory organs distinct, either protruded from the antero-lateral angles of the cephalic extremity or from dorsum of base of abdomen; adult usually emerges by forcing off the rounded anterior extremity of the puparium in cap-like form, or the dorsal half of the thoracic portion — the lines of cleavage being along the lateral margins to a point at base of abdomen; rarely emergence is through a rectangular splitting of the dorsum of the puparium.

Fig. 558. ....Suborder CYCLORRHAPHA\*



Fig. 558. a, *Toxomerus politus* Say; b, *Phytophaga destructor* (Say) (U.S.D.A.); c, Sheep bot fly, *Oestrus ovis* L. (Ohio Exp. Sta.); d, *Rhagoletis pomonella* (Walsh); e, *Leucopis griseola* Fall (U.S.D.A.)

- 2a. Antennae much elongated, distinctly visible beneath the pupal skin, normally curving well over upper margin of eyes and extending to or beyond base of wing, in some cases almost to apex of wing; head without strong thorns (except in some Cecidomyiidae and a few Tipulidae); thoracic respiratory organs much elongated or sessile; abdomen sometimes unarmed in the species with short antennae. ....Series NEMATOCERA.....3

- 2b. Antennae shorter, projecting downward and outward, not curving over the eyes or reaching nearly to base of wing; head usually with strong thorns or horns; thoracic respiratory organs sessile, rarely stalk-like; abdomen usually armed with strong spines or bristles, or if unarmed there are only 4 or 5 distinct pairs of abdominal spiracles. ....Series BRACHYCERA.....21

- 3a. Head with several strong thorns in a vertical series on the median line; pupae living in galls, sometimes in the hardened larval skin and resembling a flaxseed. Fig. 559. ....Family CECIDOMYIDAE



Fig. 559. *Monardia* sp.

Pupation takes place in different ways: some pupae are naked, some are borne in puparia and a few in silken cocoons.

\*Key to families is not available.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

3b. Head without strong thorns, or if at base of each antenna with a protuberance, thus not sharp; pupae not living in galls, but usually free and not enclosed in larval skin, if enclosed the larval moult does not resemble a muscoid puparium. ....4

4a. Thoracic respiratory organs sessil; abdomen without strong thorns or leaf like elevations; legs straight. ....5

4b. Thoracic respiratory organs stalked, or if sessile the abdomen with strong thorns or leaf-like elevations, or the legs are recurved against base of abdomen and apex of thorax, or the coxae do not conceal the sternopleura and the scape of the antennae is almost globose; legs straight or recurved. ....8

5a. Legs short, apices of hind tarsi projecting slightly beyond apices of wings; antennae short, curved across middle of eye.

Fig. 560. ....Family BIBIONIDAE

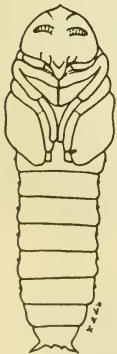


Fig. 560. *Bibio albipennis* Say.

Pupation takes place in an earthen cell in the ground.

This family, numbering some 500 species, contains a few members which are sometimes exceedingly numerous. The species pictured is our most common one. All of the members of the family seem to be vegetable feeders.

5b. Legs elongate, usually all tarsi projecting for a considerable distance beyond apices of wings; antennae elongate, extending to or beyond base of wings. ....6

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

6a. Thorax conspicuously swollen, almost globose, its anterior profile declivous; sternopleura concealed.

Fig. 561. . . . . Family MYCETOPHILIDAE

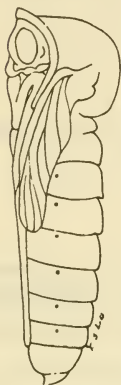


Fig. 561. *Lela oblectabilis* Loew.

Pupation takes place mostly in delicate cocoons and a few are suspended by some loose silk from the surface of fungi or other objects.

6b. Thorax not conspicuously swollen, the anterior profile not sloping downward. . . . . 7

7a. Scape of antennae much swollen, globose; abdominal spiracles small or absent; sternopleura enlarged, not concealed by fore coxae and femora. Fig. 562. . . . . Family CHIRONOMIDAE



Fig. 562. *Tanypus illinoensis* Mall.

Some pupae are active and float at water surface, but some remain in the larval tube. The respiratory organs either consist of a pair of branched filaments or of a simple tube.

7b. Scape of antennae not much swollen; abdominal spiracles distinct; sternopleura not visible, concealed by large coxae and femora of the fore legs. . . . . Family CECIDOMYIDAE

8a. Thoracic respiratory organs slender, long and tube-like; legs straight, extending well beyond apices of wings; body without armature except a pair of hairs on anterior margin of head; sternopleura concealed. . . . . Family CECIDOMYIDAE

8b. Species not in such combination of characters; abdomen usually with hairs or spines, or sternopleura exposed. . . . . 9

- 9a. Pupa in a pocket-shaped or slipper-shaped cocoon consisting of coarse threads, thoracic respiratory organ projecting from the wide open end. Fig. 563. ....Family SIMULIIDAE



Fig. 563. *Simulium venustum* Say, pupa and cocoon.

Pupation takes place in the pocket-like cocoon which is made by the larva. The respiratory organs are tube-like filaments which protrude from the cocoon.

- 9b. Pupa free, or if enclosed or partly so the cocoon is not pocket-like and respiratory organs do not consist of tube-like filaments..10  
 10a. Pupa when seen from above oval in outline; the abdominal base not conspicuously narrower than thorax, so that the lateral outline is continuous; dorsal surface with strong integument. ....11  
 10b. Pupa with abdomen well differentiated from thorax; the dorsum membranous, or if strong and almost sclerotized, then surface with well developed spines. ....12  
 11a. Thoracic respiratory organs lamelliform, consisting of 4 flat plates, the broad sides of which are contiguous. Fig. 564. ....Family BLEPHAROCERATIDAE

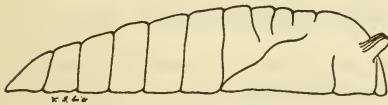


Fig. 564. *Bibiocephala* sp.

Pupation takes place in the place occupied by the larvae often results in large numbers of individuals being produced.

- 11b. Thoracic respiratory organs simple, tube-like. Fig. 565. ....Family PSYCHODIDAE



Fig. 565. *Psychoda superba* Banks.

Pupation takes place in the same habitat as that of the larvae. The pupa usually carries the larval exuviae at its caudal end.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 12a. Apical abdominal segment terminating in 2 or 4 paddle-like or fin-shaped organs which are fringed on all or part of outer surface by strap-like hairs; or if the apical segment terminates in 2 long subconical processes, the tarsi are recurved against the ventral surface of the base of the abdomen and apex of thorax so that they do not extend beyond apices of wings. ....13
- 12b. Apical abdominal segment obtuse, armed with short or elongate spines or thorns; or if ending in a pair of long, slender processes they are more or less oval in cross section and without strap-like hairs; tarsi generally entirely straight, rarely the apices of the hind pair incurved slightly, but never recurved as above. ....18
- 13a. Thoracic respiratory organs terminating in numerous thread-like filaments. ....Family CHIRONOMIDAE
- 13b. Thoracic respiratory organs consisting of a single stem, in some cases with a few long, or many short, scale-like, surface hairs, but never terminating in numerous thread-like filaments; occasionally the thoracic respiratory organs not elevated. ....14
- 14a. Thoracic respiratory organs not elevated; sternopleura exposed. ....Family CHIRONOMIDAE
- 14b. Thoracic respiratory organs conspicuously elevated. ....15
- 15a. Thoracic respiratory organs situated close to anterior margin of thorax; no stellate hairs on thorax and abdomen. ....Family CHIRONOMIDAE
- 15b. Thoracic respiratory organs situated close to middle of thoracic dorsum. ....16
- 16a. Apical abdominal segment ending in 2 or 4 broad, flat, paddle-like plates. Fig. 566. ....Family CULICIDAE



Fig. 566. *Culex* sp.

The pupae are very active and float at water surface to breath air by a pair of trumpet-like respiratory organs on the thorax. This permits their destruction by oil or poisons placed on the surface of the water.

HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

16b. Apical abdominal segment ending in 2 long subconical processes. ....17

17a. Apical processes armed with short hairs at apices and on middle of outer margin. ....Family CULICIDAE

17b. Apical processes unarmed. Fig. 567. ....Family DIXIDAE

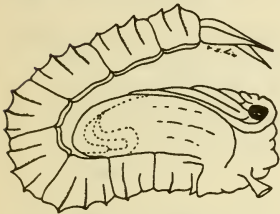


Fig. 567. *Dixa* sp.

The pupae closely resemble the pupae of Culicidae both in habit and in appearance.

18a. Apices of legs not extending beyond apices of wings. ....19

18b. Apices of legs extending beyond apices of wings. ....20

19a. Apical segment of abdomen ending in 2 conical processes. Fig. 568. ....Family CERATOPOGONIDAE



Fig. 568. *Palpomyia* sp.

The information of pupae of this family is very limited.

19b. Apical segment of abdomen ending in 2 upper and 2 lower short thorns. ....Family PSYCHODIDAE



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

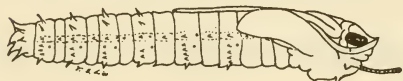
- 20a. Thoracic respiratory organs long, bifid; apical abdominal segment rounded, without processes; abdominal spiracles pedunculate. Fig. 569. ....Family SCATOPSIDAE



The biology of the pupæ of this family is not known.

Fig. 569. *Rhegmoclema atrata*  
Say.

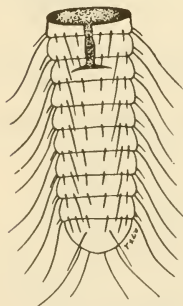
- 20b. Thoracic respiratory organs simple; apical abdominal segment not rounded, generally armed with protuberances. Fig. 570. ....Family TIPULIDAE



Pupation takes place at the similar situation as the larval.

Fig. 570. *Pachyrrhina ferruginea* Fab.

- 21a. Pupa enclosed within larval skin. Fig. 571. ....Family STRATIOMYIIDAE



Pupation takes place in soil or under debris near the place where the larvae live.

The family numbers more than 1,000 species. The eggs are variously placed in mud, water or waste materials.

Fig. 571. *Neopachygaster maculicornis*  
Hine.

- 21b. Pupa free. ....22

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 22a. Prothorax with a long aperture mesad of and connected with the spiracle. Fig. 572. ....Family **TABANIDAE**

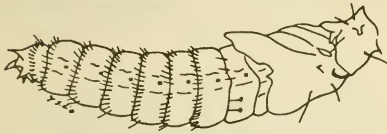


Fig. 572. *Tabanus lasiophthalmus* Macq.

The pupae are cylindrical and elongate with thoracic spiracles connected subcutaneously with a large cavity on the prothorax.

- 22b. Not as 22a. ....23

- 23a. Head without strong forwardly directed thorns, at most with 1 thorn on base of antenna which is directed to the side; abdominal armature weak, becoming gradually stronger towards apex of basal abdominal segment; apices of hind tarsi at most extending slightly beyond apices of wings; abdomen with 7 pairs of spiracles. ....24

- 23b. Head usually with strong thorns, or if absent, the abdominal armature is stronger on basal of 2nd segment than it is on apical, or there are less than 7 pairs of abdominal spiracles; apices of hind tarsi usually distinctly beyond apices of wings. ....26

- 24a. Antennal sheaths much thickened at base, apical portion slender, styliform, the whole directed almost straight downward.

- Fig. 573. ....Family **RHAGIONIDAE**

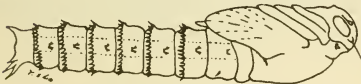


Fig. 573. *Chrysopilus ornatus* Say.

The information concerning the biology of the pupae of this family is quite limited.

- 24b. Antennal sheaths thickened throughout their length, the apical portion generally more or less distinctly annulated, the whole directed either straight sideways or in a slightly downward direction. ....25

- 25a. Antennal sheaths showing much more than 10 annulations. ....Subfamily **Rhachicerinae, RHAGIONIDAE**

- 25b. Antennal sheaths showing not more than 10 annulations. Fig. 574. ....Family **XYLOPHAGIDAE**

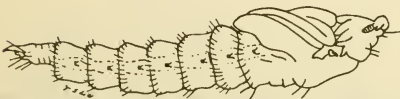


Fig. 574. *Xylophagus lugens* Loew.

Information about the pupae is very limited.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

26a. Head without strong thorns; abdomen with 3 to 4 distinct pairs of spiracles and without spinose armature.

Fig. 575. ....Family CYRTIDAE



Fig. 575. *Ogcodes costatus*  
Loew.

Pupation takes place in web, or burrow, or under some other objects near the place where the host died.

26b. Head usually with strong thorns, at least with elevated ridge-like antennal sheath and several small carinated elevations; abdomen with 7 pairs of spiracles and spinose armature. ....27

27a. Head with 2 thorns. ....28

27b. Head with more than 2 thorns or with several short tubercles...29

28a. Abdomen with a single transverse series of spines on each dorsal segment; wing with a long thorn at base.

Fig. 576. ....Family THEREVIDAE



Fig. 576. *Psilcephala haemorrhoidalis* Macquart.

The pupae are free and the pupation takes place in the soil.

The adults of this small family are known as stilto flies. The larvae are apparently predacious.

/ 28b. Abdomen with 2 transverse series of spines on each dorsal segment; wings without thorns at base. ....Family SCENOPINIDAE  
Little is known about the biology of the pupae.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 29a. Upper pair of cephalic thorns directed sideways and slightly upward; apices of wings extending to or very slight beyond apex of 1st abdominal segment; apices of middle tarsi not extending to apices of wings. Fig. 577. ....Family MYDAIDAE

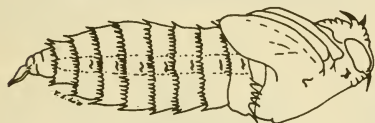


Fig. 577. *Mydas clavatus* Drury

The available information about the biology of the pupae is very limited.

- 29b. Upper pairs of cephalic thorns directed forward, at most slightly divergent apically, generally slightly curved downward, or head without strong upper thorn. ....30

- 30a. Head with strong thorns, if absent the abdomen with dorsal transverse armature consisting of very strong thorns and intervening long slender hairs; apices of antennae obtuse. ....31

- 30b. Head very rarely with thorns, 2 carinate elevations present on upper anterior margin; antennae with attenuated apices; body without thorns, sometimes with bristles. ....32

- 31a. Lower median portion of face with a closely approximated pair of stout thorns which are occasionally fused almost to apices; abdomen with transverse armature on dorsal segments consisting of short flattened thorns and long slender hairs, the thorns usually appearing as if attached to, rather than forming part of the abdomen and sometimes turned up at bases and apices.

- Fig. 578. ....Family BOMBYLIIDAE

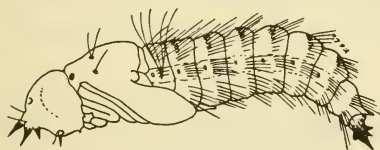


Fig. 578. *Spogostylum albofasciatum* Macquart.

When the parasite is fully grown then it leaves the host and enters the soil for pupation.

- 31b. Lower median portion of face without thorns; abdomen with transverse armature consisting of alternating long and short thorns. Fig. 579. ....Family ASILIDAE

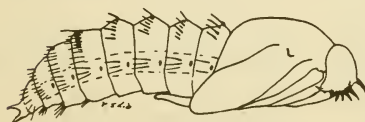


Fig. 579. *Ceraturgus cruciatus* Say.

Pupation takes place in soil. However, the pupae have the habit of coming to the surface of soil shortly before the emergence of the adult.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 32a Cephalic armature consisting of 2 carinated elevations on upper anterior margin, on each of which is a very long hair; antennal sheath raised above level of face, tapering apically, directed downward and slightly outward; proboscis often much elongated. Fig. 580. ....Family EMPIDAE

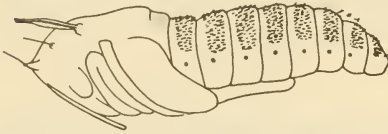


Fig. 580. *Drapetis nigra* Meigen.

Pupation takes place in a cocoon which is densely coated with wood particles.

- 32b, Similar to Empidae, but proboscis never elongated.

Fig. 581. ....Family DOLICHOPIDAE

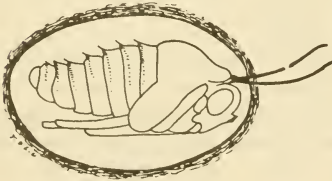


Fig. 581. *Aphrosylus praedator*

Pupation takes place in an earthen cell or in a cocoon made by wooden fragments and silk. The pupa possesses a pair of elongate thoracic respiratory horns which protruded outside of the pupal cell or cocoon.

## ORDER HYMENOPTERA

(From H. Yuasa, 1923)

- 1a. Body caterpillar-like, thoracic legs usually present; head much more strongly sclerotized than the rest of the body; prolegs usually developed, if absent the body is caterpillar-like; antennae almost always present and more than 1-segmented; mandibles heavily sclerotized almost always with more than 1 tooth; ocelli often present; larvae generally free living, or plant borers, a few are gall-makers (But the members of the family Orussidae is parasitic). ....Suborder CHALASTOGASTRA.....2



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 1b. Body maggot-like, legless; head not strongly sclerotized; antennae soft, unsegmented; mandibles weak almost never more than an apical tooth; ocelli wanting; larvae parasitic, or parasitoidal, or living upon the food supplied by the adult, a few are gall-makers. Fig. 582. ....Suborder CLISTOGASTRA\*

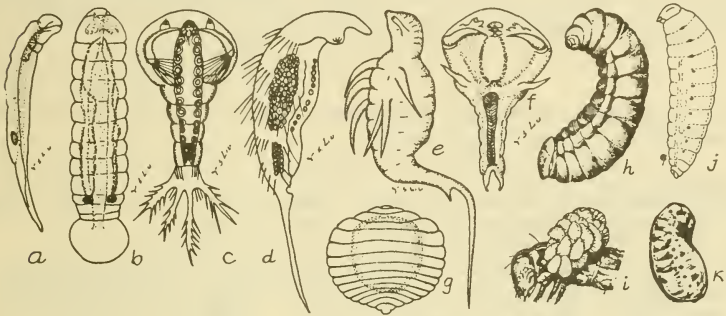


Fig. 582. a-f, Some parasitic larvae with hypermetamorphosis; g, *Aphelinus mali* Hald (Aphelinidae); h, *Chelonus* sp. (Braconidae); i, *Euplectrus plathypenae* How. (Eulophidae); j, *Vespa maculata* Kirby (Vespidae); k, *Monomorium minimum* Buckley (Formicidae).

- 2a. Thoracic legs present, either normal in form and distinctly segmented or modified; if modified, fleshy or conical, if conical, head and body depressed. ....3
- 2b. Thoracic legs not distinctly segmented, mamma-like or wanting; if mamma-like, head and body never distinctly depressed. ....17
- 3a. Thoracic legs normal in form, not seta-like, rarely nipple-shaped; prolegs usually present; subanal appendages wanting; antennae usually with less than 7 segments. ....4
- 3b. Thoracic legs seta-like; prolegs wanting; subanal appendages present, setaceous; antennae very long, 7-segmented.

Fig. 583. ....Family PAMPHILIIDAE



Fig. 583. *Pamphilium* sp.

Around 100 species have been described. The larvae roll leaves or spin webs usually live gregariously together. A few are serious orchard pests.

\*Key to families is not available.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 4a. 10 pairs of prolegs present on each abdominal segment; antennae 6- or 7-segmented. Fig. 584. ....Family XYELIDAE

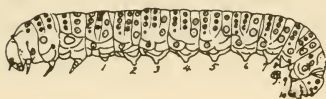


Fig. 584. *Magaxyela major*  
Cresson.

About 80 species of the xyelid sawflies have been described. The larvae are free feeders on elms, pines, hickory, butternut, etc. Pupation takes place in an earthen cell in the ground.

- 4b. 6 to 8 pairs of prolegs, sometimes reduced or absent; antennae never more than 5-segmented. ....5

- 5a. Thoracic legs normal in form, 5-segmented; if modified, tarsal claws always present; prolegs usually developed. ....6

- 5b. Thoracic legs fleshy, indistinctly 4-segmented; tarsal claws wanting.

Fig. 585. ...Subfamily Phyllotominae,  
**TENTHREDINIDAE**



Fig. 585. *Caliroa cerasi* L.

- 6a. Prolegs present on abdominal segments 2-8 and 10; antennae elongate, conical, usually 5-segmented. ....7

- 6b. Prolegs present on abdominal segments 2-7 and 10, rarely on segments 2-7 only or 2-6 and 10. ....11

- 7a. Thoracic legs 5-segmented, normal in form. ....8

- 7b. Thoracic legs 4-segmented, modified.

Fig. 586. ....Family TENTREDINIDAE

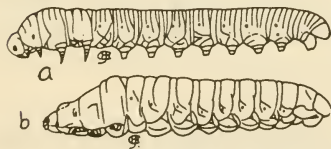


Fig. 586. a, *Emphytus* sp. (Emphytinae); b, *Phlebotrophia mathesoni* MacGillivray.

About 5,000 species of sawflies have been described. The habits of the larvae are various: leaf feeders, leaf miners, gall makers and some spin webs. Pupation usually takes place in a parchment-like cocoon on or in the ground. Many species are seriously destructive.

- 8a. 3rd abdominal segment with 6 annulets on dorsum.  
(See Fig. 587). ....9

- 8b. 3rd abdominal segment with more or less than 6 annulets on dorsum. ....10

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

### 9a. Antennae conical, 5-segmented.

Fig. 587. . . . . Family **TENTREDINIDAE**

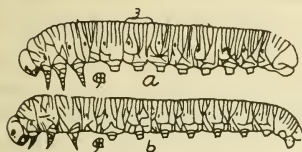


Fig. 587. a, *Tomosthetus bardus* Say (Blennocampinae); b, *Dolerus similis* Norton (Dolerinae).

This includes three subfamilies: Dolerinae, Emphytinae and Blennocampidae. The oaks, members of the rose family and grasses and sedges are frequent food plants.

### 9b. Antennae not conical, 3-segmented, erect and peg-like.

Fig. 588. . . . . Family **DIPRIONIDAE**



Fig. 588. *Neodiprion lecontei* Fitch.

About 70 species have been described. The larvae feed on the leaves of pine, spruce, cedar, etc. The body is usually yellowish or greenish with grayish or brownish stripes or with rows of black spots.

### 10a. Antennae conical, 5-segmented; labrum without secondary longitudinal sutures. Fig. 589. . . . . Family **TENTHREDINIDAE**

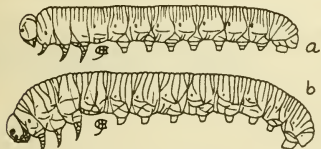


Fig. 589. a, *Strongylogaster annulosus* Norton (Selandriinae); b, *Tenthredo* sp. (Tenthredininae).

Here is included 3 subfamilies: Selandriinae, Emphytinae and Tenthredininae. Many broad-leaved trees and shrubs and ferns are attacked by members of these groups.

### 10b. Antennae not conical, 1-segmented; labrum with secondary longitudinal sutures. Fig. 590. . . . . Family **CIMBICIDAE**

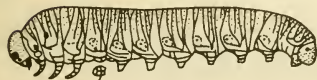


Fig. 590. *Abia inflata* Norton.

About 50 species have been described. The larvae are caterpillar-like, body usually curled spirally and covered with a waxy bloom. They feed on the leaves of different kinds of deciduous trees and shrubs. Pupation takes place in a parchment-like cocoon in an earthen cell under ground.

### 11a. Thoracic legs 5-segmented, normal in form; prolegs on abdominal segment 2-7, either with or without anal prolegs. . . . . 12

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 11b. Thoracic legs 6-segmented, or prothoracic legs 4-segmented and others 3-segmented; prolegs on abdominal segments 2-7 and 10, or 2-6 and 10, very small. Fig. 591. ....Family ARGIDAE



Fig. 591. *Hylotoma* sp.

About 200 species have been known. Larvae feed on broad-leaved deciduous trees and shrubs. The members of this family are widely scattered.

- 12a. Prolegs present on the last abdominal segment, either normal or fused on the meson, forming a single prominence. ....13

- 12b. Prolegs absent on the last abdominal segment.

Fig. 592. ....Family TENTHREDINIDAE

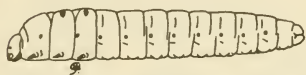


Fig. 592. *Kaliopenusa ulmi* Sun devall (Fenusinae).

The subfamilies Fenusinae and Hoplocampinae are included here. A number of leaf miners are included in the species which fall here.

- 13a. Anal prolegs normal and separated. ....14

- 13b. Anal prolegs united on the meson forming a single protuberance.

Fig. 593. ....Family TENTHREDINIDAE

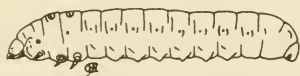


Fig. 593. *Metallus rubi* Forbes.

The subfamily Solioneurinae belongs here. They are leaf miners on members of the rose family.

- 14a. Antennae 5-segmented; 3rd abdominal segment with 6 annulets; 10th abdominal tergum with several caudal protuberances.

Fig. 594. ....Subfamily Hoplocampidae, TENTHREDINIDAE

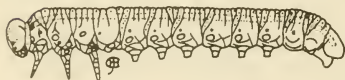


Fig. 594. *Henichroa dyari* Rohwer.

The larvae feed on the leaves of pear and other Rosaceae.

- 14b. Antennae 4-, rarely 3-segmented; 3rd abdominal segment usually with less than 6 annulets; 10th abdominal tergum with or without caudal tubercles. ....15



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- 15a. An eversible gland on ventro-meson of each abdominal segment 1-7; body often with numerous conspicuous setae, setae arising from distinct tubercles; antennae 4-segmented.

Fig. 595. ....Subfamily Nematinae, TENTHREDINIDAE

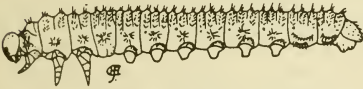


Fig. 595. *Pteronidea ribesi* Scopoli.

Some members of this rather large subfamily are gall makers, while others are known to feed on the foliage of broad-leaved trees and shrubs and on grasses and sedges.

- 15b. Without eversible glands; body never conspicuously setiferous; antennae 3- or 4-segmented. ....16

- 16a. Antennae 4-segmented; 3rd abdominal segment with 5 annulets; abdominal segments 2-4 and 8, or 2-5 and 8 without a postsubspiracular sucker-like protuberance.

Fig. 596. ....Family TENTHREDINIDAE



Fig. 596. *Cladius pectinicornis* Fourcroy (Cladinae).

The subfamilies Hoplocampinae and Cladinae are both included here. Members of the rose family furnish food for some of these species.

- 16b. Antennae 1-segmented; 3rd abdominal segment with 3 annulets; abdominal segments 2-4 and 8, or 2-5 and 8 with a postsubspiracular sucker-like protuberance.

Fig. 597. ....Family ACORDULECERIDAE

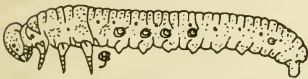


Fig. 597. *Acordulecera* sp.

Around 100 species have been described. The larvae are free feeders and gregarious on plant leaves.

- 17a. Thoracic legs present; last abdominal segment with suranal process. (See Fig. 599). ....18

- 17b. Thoracic legs wanting; last abdominal segment without suranal process. Fig. 598. ....Family ORUSSIDAE

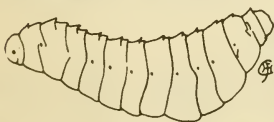


Fig. 598. *Oryssus occidentalis* Cresson.

About 50 species of the parasitic wasps are known. The larvae are parasitic on the larvae of cerambycid and buprestid beetles. The pupae have a long ovipositor which is held over the back.



HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

18a. Subanal appendages present, vestigial and palpiform; ocelli present; antennae 4- or 5-segmented. Fig. 599. . . .Family CEPHIDAE

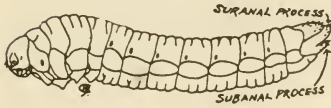


Fig. 599. *Janus integer* Norton.

Around 100 species of the stem sawflies are known. The body of the larvae is C-shaped with a small terminal abdominal appendage. They bore into the stems of grasses, trees and shrubs. Pupation takes place in the larval burrow within a thin cocoon.

18b Subanal appendages wanting; ocelli wanting. . . . . 19

19a. Antennae 3-segmented; meta-spiracles functionless, very much smaller than abdominal spiracles.

Fig. 600. . . . .Family XIPHYDRIIDAE

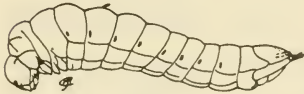


Fig. 600. *Xiphydria* sp.

Less than 50 species are known. The larvae are borers in trees. Birches and maples are known to be attacked in our country.

19b. Antennae 1-segmented; meta-spiracles functional, as large as abdominal spiracles. Fig. 601. . . . .Family SIRICIDAE

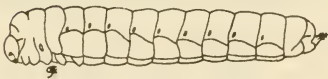


Fig. 601. *Tremex columba* L

Around 50 species of the horn-tails are known. The larvae are S-shaped and deeply segmented with a horny abdominal process. They bore in the stems of pines and other broad-leaved deciduous trees that are usually not perfectly healthy. Pupation occurs in thin parchment-like cocoon within the burrows of the larvae.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

### SOME IMPORTANT REFERENCES

#### GENERAL

- Balduf, W. V. 1935. The bionomics of entomophagous insects. 220 pp. John S. Swift Co., St. Louis.
- Clausen, Curtis P. 1940. Entomophagous insects. pp. x+668. McGraw-Hill, N. Y.
- Felt, E. P. 1917. Key to American insect galls. Bull. N. Y. St. Mus. 200:1-510.
- Frost, S. W. 1942. General entomology. pp. x+524. McGraw-Hill, N. Y.
- Hayes, Wm. P. 1932. The present status of the classification of immature insects. Tran. Ill. Acad. Sci. 24: 181-202.
- Imms, A. D. 1930. A general textbook of entomology. ed. 2. viii+703 pp. Dutton, N. Y.
- Karny, H. H. 1934. Biologie der Wasserinsekten. pp. 1-311. Wagner, Wien.
- Muesebeck, C. F. W. 1946. Common names of insects approved by the American Association of Economic Entomologists. Jour. Econ. Ent. 39(4):427-448.
- Needham, J. G., S. W. Frost, and B. H. Tothill. 1928. Leaf-mining insects. pp. viii+351. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore.
- Needham, J. G. and P. R. Needham. 1941. Guide to the study of freshwater biology. 88 pp. Comstock Pub. Co., Ithaca, N. Y.
- Peterson, Alvah. 1939. Keys to the orders of immature stages of North American insects. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 32(2):267-278.  
1949 Larvae of Insects, Part I. 84 plates, 315 pp. Pub. by the author; distributed by Ward's Natl. Sc. Est., Rochester, N. Y.
- Torre-Bueno, De La J. R. 1937. A glossary of entomology. pp. ix+336. Brooklyn Ent. Soc., Brooklyn, N. Y.

#### Order PROTURA

- Ewing, H. E. 1940. The Protura of North America. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 33:495-551.
- Womersley, H. 1927. A study of the larval forms of certain species of Protura. Ent. Mthly. Mag. 13:140-154.

#### Order THYSANURA

- MacGillivray, A. D. 1893. North American Thysanura. Cand. Ent. 25:173-174, 218-220.

#### Order COLLEMBOLA

- Bacon, G. A. 1912-14. California Collembola. Jour. Ent. Zool. 4:841-845; 5:43-46, 202-204; 6:45-47, 84, 85, 137-179.
- Mills, H. B. 1934. A monograph of the Collembola of Iowa. Ia. St. College, Mon. 3:1-143.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

### Order PLECOPTERA

- Claassen, P. W. 1931. Plecoptera nymphs of America (North of Mexico). pp. 1-195. Thomas Say Foundation, Thomas, Springfield, Ill.
- Frison, T. H. 1929. Fall and winter stone-flies or Plecoptera of Illinois. Bull. Ill. Nat. Hist. Surv. 18:345-409.
1942. Studies of North American Plecoptera, with special reference to the fauna of Illinois. Bull. Ill. Nat. Hist. Surv. 22(2):235-355.

### Order EPHEMEROPTERA

- Morgan, Anna H. 1913. A contribution to the biology of Mayflies. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 6:371-426.
- Needham, J. G., J. R. Traver, and Yin-Chi Hsu. 1935. The biology of Mayflies. pp. xiv+759. Comstock Pub. Co., Ithaca, N. Y.
- Smith, Osgood R. 1935. The eggs and egg-laying habits of North American Mayflies (With a key to the eggs of N. American Mayflies). In Needham, J. G. et al. Ibid. pp. 67-89.

### Order ODONATA

- Howe, Jr. R. H. 1918. Pictorial key to Zygoptera nymphs. Psche 25:106-110.
- 1922 and 1925. Pictorial key to Anisopteran nymphs. Psyche 29, Supplement Oct.-Dec.; 32, Supplement Dec.
- Hayes, Wm. P. 1941. A bibliography of keys for the identification of immature insects. Pt. II. Odonata. Ent. News 52(3-4): 52-55, 66-69, 93-98.
- Kennedy, C. H. 1915. Notes on the life history and ecology of the dragonflies of Washington and Oregon. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 49: 259-345.
1917. Notes on the life history and ecology of the dragonflies of Central California and Nevada. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 52:483-635.
- Needham, J. G. 1903. The life histories of Odonata, suborder Zygoptera. In Aquatic insects of New York State. pt. 3 N. Y. St. Mus. 68(18): 199-517.
- Needham, J. G. and C. A. Hart. 1901. The dragonflies of Illinois with descriptions of the immature stages. pt. I. Petaluridae, Aeschnidae and Gomphidae. Bull. Ill. St. Nat. Hist. Lab. 6(1):1-94.
- Needham, J. G. and E. Fisher. 1936. The nymphs of N. American libelluline dragonflies. Trans. Amer. Ent. Soc. 62:107-116.
- Wright, Mike and Alvah Peterson. 1944. A key to the genera of anisopterous dragonfly nymphs of the United States and Canada. Ohio Jour. Sci. 44(4):151-166.

### Order ORTHOPTERA

- Blatchley, W. S. 1920. Orthoptera of Northeastern America. 784 pp. Nature Pub. Co., Indianapolis.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

Tuck, J. B. and R. C. Smith. 1939. Identification of the eggs of Mid-western grasshoppers by the chorionic sculpturing. Kans. Exp. Sta. Tech. Bull. 48:1-39.

### Order COLEOPTERA

Anderson, William H. 1939. A key to the larval Bostrichidae in the United States National Museum. Jour. Wash. Acad. Sci. 29(9):382-391.

Boving, A. G. and A. B. Champlain. 1920. Larvae of North American beetles of the family Cleridae. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 57:575-649.

Boving, A. G. 1925. Beetle larvae of the subfamily Galerucinae. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 75(2):1-48.

Boving, A. G. and F. C. Craighead. 1932. Illustrated synopsis of the principal larval forms of the order Coleoptera. Ent. Amer. 11:1-352.

Boving, A. G. 1942. Descriptions of the larvae of some West Indian melolonthine beetles and a key to the known larvae of the tribe. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 92:167-175.

Chu, H. F. 1945. The larvae of Harpalinae, Unisetosae (Carabidae). Ent. Amer. 25(1):1-70.

Cotton, R. T. 1924. A contribution toward a classification of the weevil larvae of the subfamily Calendrinae in North America. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 66:1-11.

Craighead, F. C. 1915. Contribution toward a classification and biology of the North American Cerambycidae. Larvae of the Prioninae. U. S. Dept. Agr. Rept. 107:1-24.

1923. North American Cerambycid larvae. Dom. Cand. Dept. Agr. Tech. Bull. 27. new ser. Ent. Bull. 23:1-151.

Gage, J. H. 1920. The larvae of the Coccinellidae. Ill. Biol. Mon. 6:1-62.

Hamilton, C. C. 1925. Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and ecology of the larvae of holarctic tiger beetles (Cicindellidae). Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 65:1-87.

Hayes, Wm. P. 1929. Morphology, taxonomy, and biology of larval Scarabaeoidea. Ill. Biol. Mon. 12(2):1-119.

Hayes, Wm. P. and H. F. Chu. 1946. The larvae of the genus *Nosodendron* Latr. (Nosodendridae). Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 39(1):69-79.

Glen, Robert, Kenneth M. King, and A. P. Arnason. 1943. The identification of wireworms of economic importance in Canada. Cand. Jour. Res. 21:358-387.

Glen, Robert. 1944. Contribution to the knowledge of the larval Elateridae. no. 3. *Agriotes* Esch. and *Dalopius* Esch. Cand. Ent. 76:73-87.

McGillivray, A. D. 1903. Aquatic Chrysomelidae and table of families of coleopterous larvae. Bull. N. Y. St. Mus. 68:288-327.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- Murayama, Jozo. 1931. A contribution to the morphological and taxonomic study of larvae of certain May-beetles which occur in the nurseries of the Peninsula of Korea. Bull. Forest-Expt. Sta. Chosen No. XI, pp. 1-108.
- Fracker, S. B. 1915. The classification of lepidopterous larvae. Ill. Biol. Mon. 2 (1) : 1-169.
- Rees, Bryant E. 1943. Classification of the Dermestidae based on larval characters, with a key to the North American genera. U. S. Dept. Agr. Misc. Pub. 511:1-18.
- Richter, P. O. 1940. Kentucky white grubs. Bull. Kentucky Agr. Exp. Sta. 401:71-157.
1944. Dynastinae of North America with descriptions of the larvae and keys to genera and species. *ibid.* 467:1-56.
1945. Rutelinae of Eastern North America with descriptions of the larvae of *Strigoderrella pygmaea* (Fab.) and three species of the tribe Rutelini. *ibid.* 471:1-19.
- Sailsbury, Murl Beauford. 1943. The comparative morphology and taxonomy of some larval Criocerinae (Chrysomelidae). Bull. Brooklyn Ent. Soc. 38(3):59-74.
- Satterthwait, A. F. 1931. Key to known pupae of the genus *Calendra*, with host-plant and distribution notes. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 24(1): 143-172.
- St. George, R. A. 1924. Studies on the larvae of North American beetles of the subfamily Tenebrioninae with a description of the larvae and pupae of *Merinus laevis* (Oliv.). Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 65:1-22.
- Van Emden, F. I. 1938. On the taxonomy of Rhynchophora larvae. Trans. Roy. Ent. Soc. Lond. 87:1-37.
1939. Larvae of British beetles I. A key to the genera and most of the species of British Cerambycid larvae. Ent. Mthly. Mag. 75: 257-273; 76:7-13.
1941. Larvae of British beetles II. A key to the British Lamellicornia larvae. *Ibid.* 77:117-127; 181-192.
1942. Larvae of British beetles III. Keys to the families. *Ibid.* 78:206-272.
1943. Larvae of British beetles IV. Various small families. *Ibid.* 79:209-223; 259-270.
1942. A key to the genera of larval Carabidae. Trans. Roy. Ent. Soc. Lond. 92:1-99.

### Order HEMIPTERA

- Butler, E. A. 1923. A biology of the British Hemiptera-Heteroptera. 682 pp. H. F. & G. Witherby, London.
- Esselbaugh, Charles O. 1946. A study of the eggs of the Pentatomidae. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 39(4):667-691.



## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

- Funkhouser, W. D. 1917. Biology of the Membracidae of the Cayuga Lake Basin. Cornell Agr. Exp. Sta. Mem. 11:181-445.
- Hart, C. A. 1919. The Pentatomidae of Illinois with keys to nearctic genera. Bull. Ill. Nat. Hist. Surv. 13(7):157-218.
- Hungerford, H. B. 1919. The biology and ecology of aquatic and semi-aquatic Hemiptera. Kans. Univ. Sci. Bull. 11:3-328.
- Karny, H. H. 1934. Biologie der Wasserinsekten. pp. xv+311. Wagner, Berlin.
- Radio, P. A. 1926. Studies of the eggs of some Reduviidae. Kans. Univ. Sci. Bull. 16:157-179.
1927. Studies on the biology of the Reduviidae of America North of Mexico. Ibid. 28:1-291.

### Order NEUROPTERA

- Ross, H. H. and T. H. Frison. 1937. Studies of nearctic aquatic insects. I. Nearctic alderflies of the genus *Sialis* (Megaloptera, Sialidae). Bull. Ill. Nat. Hist. Surv. 21(3):57-100.
- Smith, R. C. 1922. The biology of the Chrysopidae. Cornell Exp. Sta. Mem. 58:1287-1372.
1923. Life histories and stages of some hemerobiids and allied species. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 16(2):129-148.

### Order TRICHOPTERA

- Elkins, Winston A. 1936. The immature stages of some Minnesota Trichoptera. Ann Ent. Soc. Amer. 29:65-81.
- Lloyd, J. T. 1921. The biology of North American caddisfly larvae. Bull. Lloyd Lib. Bot. Pharm. & Materia Medica. Bull. 21, Ent. Bull. no. 1, pp. 1-24.
- Milne, Margey J. 1939. Immature North American Trichoptera. Psyche 46:9-19.
- Ross, H. H. 1944. The caddisflies, or Trichoptera, of Illinois. Bull. Ill. Nat. Hist. Surv. 23(1):1-326.

### Order LEPIDOPTERA

- Buckler, W. 1886-1901. The larvae of the British butterflies and moths. Vols. I-IX. Ray Society, London.
- Cook, W. C. — Cutworms and armyworms. Minn. St. Ent. Cir. 52:1-8.
- Dyar, H. G. 1893. On the larval cases of North American Psychidae. Ent. News. 4:320-321.
1894. A classification of lepidopterous larvae. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 8:194-232.
1895. Additional notes on the classification of lepidopterous larvae. Trans. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 14:49-62.
1895. A classification of Lepidoptera on larval characters. Am. Nat. 29:1066-1072.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

1905. A descriptive list of a collection of early stages of Japanese Lepidoptera. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 28:937-956.
- Forbes, W. T. M. 1911. Field key to sphingid caterpillars of the Eastern United States. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 4:261-262.
1923. The Lepidoptera of New York and neighboring states. Cornell Agr. Exp. Sta. Mem. 68:1-729.
- Jones, F. M. and H. B. Parks. 1928. The bagworms of Texas. Bull. Texas Agr. Exp. Sta. 382:1-36.
- Mosher, Edna. 1914. The classification of the pupae of the Ceratopogonidae and Hemileucidae. Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 7:277-300.
1916. The classification of the pupae of the Saturniidae. Ibid. 9(2):136-156.
1916. A classification of Lepidoptera based on characters of the pupa. Bull. Ill. St. Lab. Nat. Hist. 12:12-159.
1917. Pupae of some Maine species of Notodontoidea. Bull. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. 259:29-84.

### Order DIPTERA

- Banks, N. 1912. The structure of certain dipterous larvae with particular reference to those in human foods. U. S. Dept. Agr. Bur. Ent. Tech. Ser. 22:1-44.
- Felt, E. P. 1925. Key to gall midges. Bull. N. Y. St. Mus. 257:1-239.
- Frost, S. W. 1923. A study of the leaf-mining Diptera of North America. Cornell Agr. Exp. Sta. Mem. 78:1-228.
- Greene, C. T. 1922. Illustrated synopsis of the puparia of one hundred muscoid flies. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 60(10):1-39.
1925. The puparia and larvae of sarcophagid flies. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus. 66(29):1-26.
1926. Descriptions of larvae and pupae of two-winged flies belonging to the family Leptidae. Ibid. 70(2):1-20.
1929. Characters of the larvae and pupae of certain fruit flies. Jour. Agr. Res. 38:489-498.
- Hayes, Wm. P. 1938-39. A bibliography of keys for the identification of immature insects. Pt. I. Diptera. Ent. News 49(9):246-251; 50(1):5-10, 76-82.
1944. A bibliography of keys to immature mosquitoes. Ibid. 55(6):141-145, 184-189.
- Heiss, E. M. 1938. A classification of the larvae and puparia of the Syrphidae of Illinois. Univ. Bull. 16:1-142.
- Johannsen, O. A. 1934. Aquatic Diptera. Pt. I. Nematocera, exclusive of Chironomidae and Ceratopogonidae. Cornell Agr. Exp. Sta. Mem. 164:1-71.
1935. Aquatic Diptera. Pt. II. Orthorrhapha-Brachycera and Cyclorrhapha. Ibid. 177:1-62.
1937. Aquatic Diptera. Pt. III. Chironomidae; subfamilies Tanypodinae, Diamesinae and Orthocladiinae. Ibid. 205:1-84.

## HOW TO KNOW THE IMMATURE INSECTS

1937. Aquatic Diptera. Pt. IV. Chironomidae; subfamily Chironominae. *Ibid.* 210:1-56.

Malloch, J. R. 1917. A preliminary classification of Diptera, exclusive of Pupipara, based upon larval and pupal characters, with keys to imagines in certain families. Pt. I. *Bull. III. St. Lab. Nat. Hist.* 12:161-409.

Phillips, Venia Tarris. 1946. The biology and identification of trypetid larvae (Trypetidae). *Mem. Amer. Ent. Soc.* 12:1-161.

Thomsen, L. C. 1937. Aquatic Diptera. Pt. V. Ceratopoginidae. *Cornell Agr. Exp. Sta. Mem.* 210:57-80.

### Order HYMENOPTERA

Bischoff, H. 1927. *Biologie der Hymenoptera.* 597 pp. Springer, Berlin.

Duncan, C. D. 1939. A contribution to the biology of the North American vespine wasps. *Stanford Univ. Pub. Univ. Ser. Biol. Sci.* 8(11):1-272.

Yuasa, H. 1923. A classification of the larvae of the Tenthredinoidea. *Ill. Biol. Mon.* 7:1-172.



# INDEX AND PICTURED GLOSSARY

Abedus 9  
*Abia inflata* 213  
**ACCESSORY**: secondary.  
*Acerentomidae* 55  
*Acerentomon doderoi* 55  
*Achorutes armatus* 58  
*Achorutes nivicolus* 58  
*Acordulecera* 215  
*Acorduleceridae* 215  
*Acrosternum hilare* 39  
*Acrydium granulatum* 70  
*Adelinae* 151  
*Adelphocoris rapidus* 31  
**ADFRONTAL AREA**: the area between the frontal and the adfrontal suture. Fig. 602

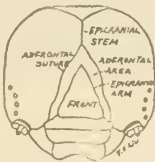


Figure 602

**ADULT**: the fully mature form. 3  
*Aegeria apiformis* 156  
*Aegeriidae* 156, 175  
*Aeschna* 68  
*Aeschnidae* 68  
*Aglycyderes* 125  
*Agrion* 68  
*Agrionidae* 68  
*Agrypnia vestita* 149  
*Airora cylindrica* 100  
*Aleyrodes* 39, 139  
*Aleyrodidae* 139  
*Alfalfa caterpillar* 13  
*Alleculidae* 116  
*Alobates pennsylvanica* 116  
*Ambrosia beetle* 128  
**AMBULATORIAL**: fitted for walking.  
 Ambush bug 132  
 American cockroach 72  
**AMETOBOLA**: a collective name for the insects without metamorphosis. 2  
*Ametropodidae* 65  
*Ametropus* 65  
*Amphicyrta dentipes* 91  
**AMPHINEUSTIC**: having only the first thoracic and the last or the last two pairs of spiracles open.  
*Amphizoa* 78  
*Amphizoidae* 78  
*Anabrus simplex* 10, 71  
*Anajapox vesiculosus* 57  
**ANAL RISE**: the anal opening is frequently situated on the summit of a mound-like elevation known as the anal rise.  
*Anasa tristis* 134  
*Andricus seminator* 21  
*Anisoptera* 67

*Anistominae* 80  
**ANNULATION**: formation of ring-like parts or annulets.  
**ANNULET**: the ring-like subdivision of a segment.  
**ANNULIFORM**: ring-like. Fig. 603



Figure 603

*Aspilidae* 119  
*Aspilum striatum* 119  
*Aspilota kansana* 2, 46, 88  
*Aspilota* 16, 191  
*Aspilota* 37  
**ANTENNA**: (pl. antennae) the segmented appendages on each side of the head. Fig. 604



Figure 604

**ANTEPENULTIMATE**: the second before the last.  
*Anthicidae* 111  
*Anthicus heroicus* 111  
*Anthophila pariana* 164, 176  
*Antipus* 123  
 Ant-lions 145  
*Aphelinidae* 211  
*Aphelinus mali* 211  
*Aphididae* 139  
*Aphid lion* 9, 16, 18, 144  
*Aphids* 139  
*Aphrosylus praedator* 210  
*Apion* 127  
*Apioninae* 127  
**APODOUS**: footless.  
**APPENDIX**: an additional part.  
 Apple leaf roller 7  
 Apple skeletonizer 164  
**AQUATIC**: living wholly in water.  
*Archips argyrospila* 162  
*Archips fumiferana* 162  
*Arctidae* 165, 166, 169, 186  
*Arctocorixa alternata* 129  
**ARCULATE**: arched or bow-like.  
*Argidae* 214  
*Armyworms* 165  
*Arthropleona* 58  
*Ascalaphidae* 145  
*Asilidae* 199, 209  
*Asopinae* 133  
*Asparagus beetle* 7, 124  
**ASPERATE**: roughened.

*Aspirator* 24  
 Assassin bugs 133  
*Astenophylax* 49, 148  
*Atherix* 196  
*Attelabus* 127  
**ATTENUATE**: gradually tapering apically.  
*Atteva* 179  
 Auditory organ 70, 71  
*Aulonium tuberculatum* 112  
 Australian cockroach 72  
*Azalea leaf miner* 152

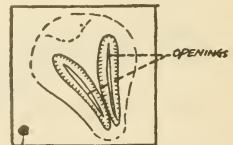
## B

Back swimmers 129  
*Baetidae* 66  
 Bagworm 19  
*Basilarchia astyanax* 170  
**BEAK**: the jointed rostrum of the front of head. Fig. 605



Figure 605

Bean thrips 10  
 Bean weevil 121  
 Bedbug 132  
*Belostoma flumineum* 130  
*Belostomatidae* 130  
 Bee flies 199  
 Beet webworm 154  
*Berginus maidnori* 112  
*Bibio albipennis* 45, 193, 201  
*Bibiocephala* 190  
*Bibionidae* 193, 201  
**BICUSPIDATE**: two-pointed.  
**BIFOROUS**: having two openings. Fig. 606



A BIFOROUS SPIRACLE

Figure 606

**BIFURCATE**: forked into two.  
 Bill bugs 127  
**BIORDINAL CROCHETS**: the hooks arranged in a uniserial circle but of two alternating lengths.  
 Bird lice 34  
 Biting lice 34  
 Biting midges 194  
*Bittacus pilicornus* 52  
 Black flies 192



# INDEX

Black Hills beetle 43  
 Blastobasidae 164  
 Blasturus cupidus 66  
 Blatella germanica 35, 72  
 Blattidae 72  
 Blennocampinae 213  
 Blepharoceratidae 190, 203  
 Blissus leucopterus 1, 134  
 Blood worms 194  
 Booklice 35  
 Bookworm 100  
 Boll-weevil parasite 7  
 Bombycidae 171, 187  
 Bombyliidae 199, 209  
 Bombyx mori 171, 187  
 Boros unicolor 115  
 Bostrichidae 120  
 Bothrideres 111  
 Bothrioderini 100, 111  
 Brachycentrus 49  
 Brachycera 189, 200  
 Brachypsecti 96  
 Brachypsectra fulva 96  
 Brachytarsus 128  
 Braconidae 211  
 Brentia pavonacella 181  
 Brentidae 125  
 Brephos infans 188  
 Bristletails 30  
 Broad-shouldered water-striders 132  
 Broadwinged damselflies 68  
 Brown lacewings 145  
 Brown-tail moth 168  
 Bruchophagus funebris 42  
 Bruchophagus gibbus 43  
 Bruchus pisorum 121  
 Brucidae 121  
 Bucculatrix 155  
 Buffalo-gnat 14, 192  
 Buprestidae 94  
 Burying beetles 82  
 Byrrhidae 90, 91  
 Byrrhus fasciatus 91  
 Byrrhus pilula 91  
 Byturinae 111  
 Byturus unicolor 111

## C

Cabbage butterfly 172  
 Cabbage root maggot 14, 18  
 Cabbageworm 172  
 Cadelle 100  
 Caenidae 65  
 Calendrinae 127  
 Caliroa cerasi 212  
 Callimerus arcifer 99  
 Callops nigriceps 99  
 Callydrias eubule 182  
 Calopodinae 113  
 Calopteron reticulatum 98  
 Calopus angustus 113  
 Calpodes ethlius 180  
 Camel cricket 71  
 Campodea fragilis 30, 56  
 Campodeidae 56  
 CAMPODEIFORM: a type of larvae with flattened body, long legs and caudal filaments. 12  
 Campsurus 63  
 Camptocladus byssinus 45, 194  
 Cantharidae 97  
 Cantharis 97  
 Capnia vernalis 61  
 Capniidae 61  
 Capnochroa fuliginosa 116

Carabidae 76  
 CARABIFORM: a type of larvae with flattened body and short legs.  
 CARDO (pl. cardines): basal piece of maxilla. See maxilla.  
 CARNIVOROUS: feeding on animals.  
 Carpenterworm 156  
 Carpet beetle 98  
 Carpopapsa pomonella 5  
 Carposinidae 160  
 Carrion beetles 82  
 Cartodere costulata 101  
 Case bearers 150  
 Case-making clothes moth 158  
 Cassida nebulosa 125  
 Cassinidae 125  
 CATERPILLAR: larva of Lepidoptera.  
 Catogenus 106  
 Cattle grub 189  
 Cebrion antennatus 96  
 Cebrionidae 96  
 Cecidomyiidae 190, 200, 202  
 Cedar beetles 93  
 Cephaloidea 113  
 Cephaloon lepturides 113  
 Cephalidae 216  
 Cerambycidae 51, 101  
 Cerambycobius cyaniceps 7  
 Ceramico picta 41  
 Ceratitidis capitata 189  
 Ceratopogonidae 194, 205  
 Ceratophyllus fasciatus 45  
 Ceraturgus cruciata 209  
 CERCI: two appendages of the 10th abdominal segment, usually clender and filamentous.  
 Cercopidae 137  
 Ceroplastes floridensis 138  
 Cerura vinula 40, 47  
 Chaetartria seminulum 117  
 Chalastogastra 210  
 Chalepus ater 125  
 Checkered beetles 99  
 Chelonariidae 93  
 Chelonarium 93  
 Chelonus 211  
 Chermidae 138  
 Chestnut timberworm 128  
 Chestnut weevil 42  
 Chewing and lapping mouth parts 51  
 CHEWING MOUTH PARTS: Fig. 607



Figure 607

Chicken louse 34  
 Chinch bug 1, 134  
 Chinese mantis 70  
 Chinese silkworm 171  
 Chironomidae 194, 202, 204  
 CHRYSALIS: the pupa of Lepidoptera.

Chrysobothris femorata 44  
 Chrysochus auratus 123  
 Chrysomelidae 122-125  
 Chrysopa oculata 50, 144  
 Chrysopidae 144  
 Chrysopilus ornatus 207  
 Cicadellidae 137  
 Cicadidae 136  
 Cicindelidae 76  
 Cigarette beetle 119  
 CILIA (sing., cilium): thin and scattered hairs.  
 Cimbicidae 213  
 Cimex lectularis 132  
 Cimex rotundatus 132  
 Cimicidae 132  
 Cirphis unipuncta 41  
 Cistidae 100  
 Cladinae 215  
 Cladius pectinicornis 215  
 Cladoxeninae 104  
 CLAW: a hollow sharp organ at distal end of leg.  
 Cleridae 99  
 Clinidium sculptile 75  
 Clitogastra 211  
 Clover leaf weevil 13, 18  
 Clover-seed caterpillar 162  
 Cliver seed-chalcid 42, 43  
 CLYPEUS: a part of the head, below the front, to which the labrum is attached anteriorly.  
 Clytra quadripunctata 123  
 Clytrinae 123  
 COARCTATE: a type of pupa with the appendages obscured with the larval skin.  
 Coccidae 138  
 Coccinellidae 51, 109  
 Coccoecia rosaceana 17  
 Coccus cacti 138  
 Cockroach 8, 72  
 COCOON: a covering composed of silk or other materials and made by larva for the protection of larva and pupa.  
 Codling moth 5  
 Coenagrionidae 67  
 Coleophora malivorella 150, 182  
 Coleophoridae 150, 157, 182  
 Coleoptera 72  
 Collecting apparatus 22  
 Collembola 58  
 COLLOPHORE: the ventral tube of Collembola.  
 Colorado potato beetle 17, 51  
 Colydiidae 100, 111, 112  
 Comb-clawed bark beetles 116  
 Common cattle grub 14, 189  
 COMPLETE METAMORPHOSIS: the growth of insects from egg to larva and then through the pupa to the adult.  
 COMPLEX METAMORPHOSIS: same as complete metamorphosis.  
 COMPOUND EYES: a group of separate visual organs known as ommatidia on each side of the head.



# INDEX

**CONDYLE:** a process articulating the base of the mandible to the head.

**CONDYLIFORM:** condyle-like.

Confused flour beetle 116  
Coniopterygidae 144

Conotrachelus nenuphar 40  
Coreidae 134

Corixidae 129  
Corn earworm 13, 47, 165, 168

**CORNICLES** (sing., corniculus): a pair of dorso-lateral tubules on the posterior part of the abdomen which secrete a waxy liquid. Fig. 608



Figure 608

**CORNIFORM:** like the horn of an ox.

Corrodentia 35  
Corydalinae 141

Corydalus cornutus 12, 40, 50, 53, 141

Corylophodes marginicollis 106

Corythucha arcuata 134  
Cossidae 156, 163, 179

Cossus cossus 156  
Cossus liquidperda 156

**COXA** (pl., coxae): the basal segment of the leg. See leg.

Cranberry toad bug 136  
Crane flies 191

**CREMASTER:** the terminal spine of the abdomen of pupa.

Creontiades pallidus 135

**CRIBRIFORM:** with perforations like those of a sieve.

Criocerinae 124  
Crioceris asparagi 7, 124

**CROCHETS:** the hooks on the prolegs of caterpillars.

154

Cryptolechia quercicella 184  
Cryptophagidae 104

Cryptophagus saginatus 104

Ctenocephalides canis 50  
Cucujidae 100, 104-106

Cucumber beetle 6  
Culex 45, 189, 191, 204

Culex pungens 7  
Culicidae 191, 204, 205

Cupes concolor 73  
Cupesidae 73

Curculio proboscideus 42  
Curculionidae 51, 126, 127

Cutworms 165, 168  
Cyclorrhapha 53, 189, 200

Cyrtidae 197, 208

## D

Dacnini 110  
Damsel flies 32, 67

Danaidae 173  
Danaus plexippus 173

Dance flies 197  
Dascillidae 89, 93, 96, 102

Dascillus davidsoni 89  
Datana ministra 168

**DECLIVOUS:** sloping gradually downward.

**DEHISCENCE:** the splitting of the pupal integument in the emergence of the adult.

Dendroctonus frontalis 41  
Dendrictonus ponderosae 43

Depressaria heracliana 164, 183

Derataphrus oregonensis 100, 111

Dermaptera 37  
Dermestidae 98, 111

Derodontidae 102  
Derodontus maculatus 102

Development 1  
Diamond-back moth 159

Diapheromera femorata 72  
Diatraea 184

Dineutes 74  
Diprionidae 213

Diptera 189  
**DISCOIDAL:** shaped like a round plate.

Dixa 193, 205  
Dixidae 193, 205

Doa 168  
Dobsonfly 12, 141

Dolerinae 213  
Dolerus similis 213

Dolichopidae 197, 210  
Dolichopus 197

Donacia 122  
Donaciinae 122

**DORSUM:** the dorsal surface.

**DOUBLE COCOON:** some cocoons contain an inner one within an outer one.

Dragonflies 32, 67  
Drapetis nigra 210

Drege 23  
Drosophila ampelophila 189

Drugstore beetle 119  
Dryocora 105

Dryophanta gall 21  
Dryophanta lanata 21

Dryopidae 93  
Dryops 93

Dytiscidae 77  
Dytiscus 77

Dung midges 192  
Dustlice 35

## E

**ECDYSIS:** shedding the larval skin between instars; moulting. 3

Ecdyriidae 64  
Ectoedemia 152

**ECTOPARASITE:** one which lives and feeds on other animals from the outside.

Egg 3  
Egg types 5

Elateridae 95

**ELATERIFORM:** a type of larvae with elongated cylindrical body and thick, tough body wall.

Electric light bugs 130  
Eleodes lecheri 13

Ellipes minuta 69  
**ELYTRA** (sing., elytron): the leathery fore wings of beetles.

**EMARGINATION:** a cut-out place in the margin.

Embia major 36  
Empioptera 36

**EMBRYONIC DEVELOPMENT:** the period of the development of an insect between fertilization and the hatching of the egg.

**EMERGENCE:** the escape of a winged insect from its nymph or pupal case.

Emphytus 212  
Empidae 197, 210

Empoasca fabae 137  
**EMPODIUM** (pl., empodia): the single pad-like or filiform median process between the claws.

Endomychidae 108  
**ENDOPARASITE:** one that secures its food by living within other animals.

Ennearthron 100  
Entomobrya comparata 30

Entomobrya laguna 58  
Entomobryidae 58

Eosentomen ribogai 54  
Eosentomidae 54

Epargyreus tityrus 171  
Ephemerella 65

Ephemerellidae 65  
Ephemerella 63

Ephemeroptera 62  
Ephilachninae 109

Epicauta vittata 15  
**EPICRANIAL SUTURE:** (epicranial stem) the suture on the dorsal surface of the head. Fig. 609.

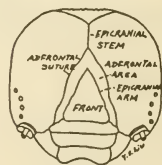


Figure 609

Epilachna 109  
Epilachna varivestis 6, 109

Epipaschiinae 180  
**EPIPHARYNX:** the inner surface of the labrum.

Ericerus pe-la 138  
Eriocraniidae 152, 173

Eristalis bastardi 189  
Erotylidae 103, 104, 110

**ERUCIFORM:** a type of larvae having a cylindrical body and both thoracic legs and prolegs.

Ethmia 169, 183  
Ethmiidae 169, 183

# INDEX

Eucinetinae 102  
 Eucinetus 102  
 Euclea chloris 178  
 Eucnemidae 95  
 Eulophidae 211  
 Eumolpinae 123  
 Euparius marmoratus 128  
 Euplectrus platypenae 211  
 Euplectrus confluens 84  
 Eupsalis minuta 125  
 European corn borer 53, 179  
 Eurosta solidaginis 21  
 Eurygenius campanulatus 114  
 Euryymus eurytheme 13  
 Eurypogon niger 93  
 Eurystethidae 111  
 Eurystethus californicus 111  
 Eurytoma tylodermatis 7  
 Euxoa auxiliaris 47, 168  
**EXARATE**: a type of pupa with appendages free.  
**EXCAVATE**: with a depression that is not a circle or a segment.  
 Exechia nativa 192  
**EXUVIAE**: the cast skin of insects.

## F

**FALCATE**: sickle-shaped.  
**FALCIFORM**: having the form of a sickle.  
 Fall armyworm 5  
 Fall webworm 166  
 False chinch bug 134  
 False wireworm 13  
 Feather-winged beetles 80  
**FEMUR** (pl., femora): a segment of the leg, between trochanter and leg. See leg.  
 Fenusinae 214  
**FILIFORM**: slender and more or less of equal diameter.  
 Firebrat 28, 56  
 Fire-colored beetles 114  
 Fireflies 97  
**FISSURE**: a slit.  
**FLAGELLATE**: whip-like.  
 Flat-headed apple tree borer 44  
 Flat-headed borers 94  
 Flebotomus argentipes 193  
 Flebotomus chinensis 193  
 Flebotomus major 193  
 Florida wax scale 138  
**FORCEPS**: hook or pincer-like processes on the caudal end of the abdomen.  
 Forcipomyia specularis 194  
 Forficula 37  
 Formicidae 211  
**FOSSA** (pl., fossae): a pit.  
**FOSSORIAL**: fitted for digging or burrowing.  
 Fringe-winged fungus beetles 106  
 Frit fly 40  
 Froghoppers 137  
**FRONTAL SUTURE**: the arms of the epicranial suture.  
 Fruit tree leaf roller 162  
 Fulgoridae 136  
**FUNGIVOROUS**: feeding on fungi.  
 Fungus gnats 192

**FURCULA**: in Collembola; the more or less forked leaping appendage on the 4th abdominal segment.  
 Furniture beetle 119  
**FUSIFORM**: spindle-shaped.

## G

**GALEA**: the outer lobe of the maxilla. Fig. 610



Figure 610

Galerucinae 124  
**GALL**: abnormal growth of plant tissue, caused by stimuli not of the plant itself, generally by insects.  
 Galleria melonella 185  
 Galliahaetis fluctuans 66  
 Garden webworm 154  
 Gelastocoridae 130  
 Gelastocoris oculatus 130  
 Gelechiidae 151, 156, 164, 183  
**GENITALIA**: all of the genital structures; the reproductive organs.  
 Geocoris 134  
 Geometridae 166, 188  
 Geosargus viridas 195  
 German cockroach 8, 35, 72  
 Gerridae 131  
 Gerris remigis 131  
 Giant water bugs 130  
 Gibbium psylloides 119  
**GILL**: a special, variously formed respiratory organ in aquatic insects.  
 Glischrochilus obtusus 107  
 Glossosomatinae 147  
 Glowworms 97  
 Glyphipterygidae 164, 176  
 Gnarimoschema operculele 156  
 Goat moth 156  
 Golden-eye lacewing 50, 144  
 Goldenrod ball gall 21  
 Goniocotes gigas 34  
 Gracilaria azaleella 152  
 Gracilariidae 152, 153, 174, 177  
**GRADUAL METAMORPHOSIS**: the growth of insects from the egg through the nymph to the adult.  
 Granary weevil 127  
 Grape phylloxera 139  
 Grape-vine plume 167  
 Grasshopper 7, 10, 70  
 Greenhouse thrips 38  
 Greenhouse whitefly 139  
 Green lacewings 144  
 Green peach aphid 139  
 Green stink bug 39  
 Ground beetle 12

Grouse locust 70  
**GRUB**: the larva of Coleoptera.  
 Gryllidae 69, 71  
 Gryllotalpinae 69  
**GULA**: the central part of the head beneath, laterally bounded by the genae.  
**GULAR SUTURE**: the line between the gula and the genae. Fig. 611

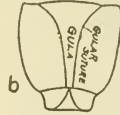


Figure 611

Gypsy moth 7, 168  
 Gyrinidae 74

## H

**HABITATION** (or habitat): the region where the animal lives naturally.  
 Haematopinus adventicius 37  
 Halpidae 75  
 Harpalus vagans 29, 49  
 Harpalus viridiae 76  
 Helgramites 141  
 Helieopsyche 49  
 Heliodinidae 158, 162  
 Heliopsis armigera 13, 47, 165, 168  
 Heliothrips haemorrhoidalis 38  
 Helms aeneus 93  
 Helochares 117  
 Helodidae 90, 92  
 Helophorinae 117  
 Helophorus aquaticus 117  
 Hemerobiidae 145  
 Hemerobius pacificus 145  
 Hemerocampa leucostigma 185  
 Hemerocampa vetusta 13, 168  
 Hemipenthes 199  
 Hemiptera 129  
 Hemichroa dyari 214  
 Hen louse 34  
 Hepialidae 159, 178  
 Hepialus humuli 159  
 Heptagenia 33, 64  
**HERBIVOROUS**: feeding on plants.  
 Hecothrips fasciatus 10  
 Hesperiiidae 171, 180  
 Hesperobaenus 103  
 Hesperophylax 17, 40, 52  
 Hessian fly 189, 190  
 Heteroceridae 89  
 Heterocerus ventralis 89  
**HETEROMETABOLA**: a collective name for the insects with gradual or incomplete metamorphosis.  
 Hexagenia bilineata 33, 63  
**HIBERNATION**: a period of lethargy or suspended animation in animals occurring during seasonal low temperatures.

# INDEX

Hippodamia convergens 109  
 Hispinae 125  
 Histeridae 117  
 Hog louse 37  
 Hololepta yucateca 117  
**HOLOMETABOLA:** a collective name for the insects having complete metamorphosis.  
 Homoptera 135  
 Honey dew 20  
 Haplacampinae 214  
 Hornworms 170  
 Horse flies 195  
 Housefly 6  
 Humpbacked flies 197  
 Hydrobia tarda 77  
 Hydrochinae 118  
 Hydrochus squamifer 118  
 Hydrometra martini 131  
 Hydrometridae 131  
 Hydrophilidae 79, 117, 118  
 Hydropsyche 40, 49, 146  
 Hydropsychidae 146  
 Hydroptila waubesiana 146  
 Hydroptilidae 146  
 Hydrosaphinae 79  
 Hygrobiidae 77  
 Hylemya brassicae 14, 18  
 Hylotoma 214  
 Hymenoptera 210  
 Hypantria cunea 166  
 Hypera punctata 13  
**HYPERMETAMORPHOSIS:** a kind of metamorphosis with several different larval stages, succeeding each other.  
 Hypoderma lineatum 7, 14, 189  
 Hypopharyngeal bracon 121  
**HYPOPHARYNX:** see tongue.  
**HYPOPLEURON:** the lower part of the epimeron. Fig. 612



Figure 612

**HYPOSTOMA:** the area of the head around the antennae, eyes and mouth.

## I

Iapygidae 57  
 Iapyx minemus 30, 57  
 Idiocerus provancheri 39  
**IMAGO:** another name for adult.  
 Imported currantworm 47  
**INCISURE:** the impressed line marking the junction of two segments.  
 Incurvariidae 151, 155, 175  
 Inflated larvae 25  
**INQUILINE:** an insect guest of other insects.  
**INSTAR:** the stage of an insect between two moults. 3

Ischnura 67  
 Isia isabella 186  
 Isoptera 36  
 Isotoma palustris 58

## J

Janus integer 216  
 Japanese beetle 4, 88  
 Japyx minemus 30, 57  
 Jumping plant lice 138  
 June beetle 88

## K

K. A. A. D. mixture 26  
 Kaliofenusa ulmi 214  
 Katydid 7, 71

## L

**LABIAL PALPI:** the appendages on each side of the labium.  
**LABIUM:** the lower lip of the insect. Fig. 613

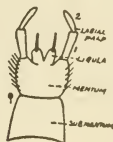


Figure 613

**LABRUM:** the upper lip of the insect.  
 Laccifer lacca 138  
 Lace bugs 134  
 Lacewings 144  
**LACINIA (pl., laciniae):** the inner lobe of the maxilla. see maxilla.  
 Lac-insects 138  
 Ladybird beetles 109  
 Laemophloeus biguttatus 106  
 Lagria 116  
 Lagriidae 116  
 Lamellicornia 51  
**LAMELLIFORM:** shaped like leaves.  
 Lampyridae 97  
 Languria angustata 103  
 Languria mozardi 110  
 Languriinae 103  
 Lantern-flies 136  
 Lapara 171  
 Laphygma frugiperda 5  
 Large chestnut weevil 42  
 Large chicken louse 34  
 Larger elm leaf beetle 124  
**LARVA (pl., larvae):** the young of insects with complete metamorphosis, preceding the pupal stage and after the egg stage. 3, 11  
 Lasiocampidae 169, 184  
 Lasioderma serricorne 119  
 Laspeyresia interestinctana 162, 176  
 Lathridiidae 101, 102  
 Laxostege similis 154  
 Laxostege sticticalis 154

Lead cable borer 120  
 Leaf bugs 135  
 Leaf miners 150  
 Leaf rollers 17, 162  
 Leafhoppers 137  
 Leather jackets 191  
**LEG:** Fig. 614



Figure 614

Leiachrodes 116  
 Leopard moth 163  
 Lepidoptera 149  
 Lepisma 30  
 Lepisma saccharina 56  
 Lepismidae 56  
 Leptinidae 80  
 Leptinotarsa decemlineata 17, 40, 51  
 Leptinus testaceus 80  
 Leptocella albida 149  
 Leptoceridae 148, 149  
 Leptocorixa varicornis 134  
 Leptophlebiidae 66  
 Leucopis griseola 189, 200  
 Leuctra decepta 61  
 Libellula lactuosa 68  
 Libellulidae 68  
**LIFE CYCLE:** the period of time between fertilization of the egg and the sperm and the death of the individual.  
 Life history 28  
**LIFE STAGE:** a definite period within the life of an insect such as egg, larva, pupa or adult stage.  
**LIGULA:** the central sclerite of the labium.  
 Limacodidae 150, 178  
 Limnebiinae 79  
 Limnephilidae 148  
 Limnophilus indivisus 49, 148  
 Lined spittle-bug 137  
 Linognathus vituli 28  
 Lipeurus caponis 34  
 Lithacolletis argentinotella 174  
 Lithacolletis hamadryadella 152, 174  
 Lithosiinae 165  
 Locusta migratoria 71  
 Locustidae 71  
 Long-horned grasshopper 71  
 Long-legged flies 197  
 Long-nosed cattle louse 28  
 Long-toed water beetles 93  
 Loopers 166  
 Lucanidae 87  
 Lycanidae 171, 181  
 Lycanopsis ladon 181  
 Lycidae 98  
 Lyctidae 120  
 Lyctus cavicollis 120  
 Lygaeidae 134  
 Lygus iblineatus 135  
 Lymantriidae 168, 169, 185, 186  
 Lymexyliidae 128  
 Lyonetta speculella 155, 177  
 Lyonetiidae 155, 158, 177, 182

# INDEX

## M

Machilidae 56  
*Machilis martina* 56  
*Magaxyla major* 212  
**MAGGOT:** larvae of certain Diptera.  
*Magiscada septendecim* 4, 39, 136  
**MALA:** a lobe; sometimes applied to the galea and lacinia when fused. Fig. 615

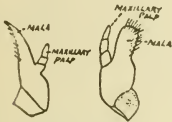


Figure 615

*Malacosoma americana* 169  
*Malacosoma disstria* 184  
*Mallophaga* 34  
**MALPIGHIAN TUBES:** the excretory organs of the insect, emptying into the hind intestine.  
**MANDIBLE:** the first pair of jaws. 73 Fig. 616



Figure 616

**MANDIBULO-SUCTORIAL:** a type of mouth parts. 50 Fig. 617

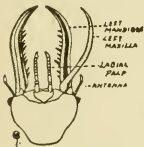


Figure 617

Mantid 8, 69  
 Mantidae 70  
*Mantispa styriaca* 143  
 Mantispidae 143  
 Maple case-bearer 41, 151  
 March flies 193  
 Marsh springtail 58

**MAXILLAE** (sing., maxilla): the second pair of jaws. Fig. 618



Figure 618

**MAXILLARY PALPI** (sing., palpus or palp): a pair of appendages carried by the maxilla. See maxilla.

Mayfly 6, 33  
 Meal moth 154  
 Mealworm 116  
 Mealy-bugs 138  
 Measuring worms 166  
 Mecoptera 46, 47, 52  
 Mediterranean fruit fly 189  
*Megacephala carolina* 76  
*Melalopha* 168  
 Melandryidae 113  
*Melandrya striata* 110  
 Meloididae 110  
*Melanitis leda* 167  
*Melanoplus differentialis* 31  
*Melanoplus femur-rubrum* 71  
*Melasis rufipennis* 95  
*Melittia satyriniformis* 156  
*Melittomma sericeum* 128  
 Meloidea 85  
 Melyridae 99  
 Membracidae 137

**METAPNEUSTIC:** having only the last pair of abdominal spiracles open.

**MENTUM:** the distal sclerite of the labium. See labium.

**MESOPLEURON:** the lateral sclerite of the mesothorax.

**MESOTHORAX:** the second or middle segment of the thorax.

*Metaecus paradoxus* 86

*Metallus rubi* 214

**METAMORPHOSIS:** changes of form of insects as they pass from one stage to another.

**METAPLEURON:** the lateral sclerite of the metathorax.

**METATHORAX:** the last or third thoracic segment.

Metcalf, Z. P. 3

*Mesovelia mulsanti* 132

Mexican bean beetle 6

*Microentomon perposillum*

29, 55

Micromalthidae 74

*Micromalthus debilis* 45, 74

Micropterygidae 149, 173

Micropteryx 149

Midges 194

Migratory locust 71

**MINES:** galleries made by larvae between the upper and lower covering of a plant leaf. 21

Minute brown scavenger beetles 102

*Miridae* 135

*Mnemonica auricyanea* 152, 173

**MOLA** (or molar): the grinding surface of the mandibles. Fig. 619.

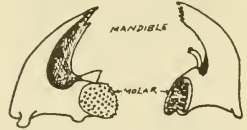


Figure 619

*Molamba lonata* 14

*Molanna uniophila* 148

Molar structure 73

Mole cricket 69

Mollanidae 148

Monarch butterfly 173

*Monardia* 200

*Monocesta coryli* 124

*Monomorium minimum* 44, 211

Monotomidae 103, 107

Mordellidae 118

Mormon cricket 71

Mosquitoes 191

Moth flies 193

**MOULT** (or molt): the periodical shedding of the skin or outer covering of insects as they grow. This process is also called ecdysis.

**MOUTH PARTS:** a collective name for the structures of an insect's mouth, including labrum, mandible, maxillae, labium and other related appendages. (See Figs. 46 and 47)

**MULTIARTICULATE:** with many segments.

**MULTIORDINAL CROCHETS:** the hooks on the prolegs when they are of many different lengths but all arranged in a single row.

*Murmidiidae* 108

*Murmidius ovalis* 108

*Musca domestica* 6

Mycetophagidae 112

*Mycetophagus punctatus* 112

*Mycetophilidae* 192, 193, 202

*Mydidae* 198, 209

*Mydas clavatus* 198, 209

*Mydas* flies 198

*Myiatropa florea* 44

*Myochrous denticolli* 124

**MYRMECOPHILOUS:** insects that live in ant nests.

*Myrmeleon* 145

*Myremeleontidae* 145

*Mytilaspis citricola* 138

*Myzus persicae* 139

## N

**NAIAD:** any nymph with aquatic habits.



# INDEX

NASALE: labrum fused with the head. Fig. 620



Figure 620

NATATORY: fitted for swimming.

NAUPLIIFORM: when the larva resembles the nauplius stage in Crustacea.

Needle miners 151

Neelidae 58

Neelides folsomi 58

Nematocera 53, 189, 200

Nemopteridae 143

Nemoura sinuata 60, 61

Nemouridae 60, 61

Neodiprion 213

Neopachygaster maculicornis 206

Neopyrochroa femoralis 114

Nepidae 130

Nepticula plataneella 175

Nepticula slingerlandella 152

Nepticulidae 152, 175

Net-winged midges 190

Neuroptera 53, 140

Nevermannia dorcatomoides 119

Nilionidae 116

Niptus 119

Nitidulidae 107

Noctuidae 165-169, 185, 186

NODULE: a small abrupt knot or swelling.

NO METAMORPHOSIS (ametamorphosis): with but slight or no change of form during development.

Nosodendrinae 90

Nosodendron californicus 90

Nosodermini 113

Nossidium americanum 80

Noterinae 77

Noterus 77

Notodontidae 168, 187, 188

Notolophus antiquae 169

Notonecta undulata 129

Notonectidae 129

NOTUM: the dorsal part of a segment.

Number of species of insects 3.

NUTANT: nodding; with the tip bent horizontally.

Nygma phaeorrhoea 168

NYMPH: the young of insects which have gradual metamorphosis. 3, 9

Nymphalidae 170, 172, 173, 181, 186

Nymphula mymphaeta 154

Nymphula stagnata 154

Nysius 134

## O

OBLITERATE: indistinct.

OBSOLETE: almost or entirely absent; indistinct.

OBTECT: a type of pupa having the appendages appressed to its body.

OCCELLUS (pl., ocelli): the simple eye.

Ochthebius mipressus 79

Ochteridae 131

Ochterus 131

Odonata 67

Oecanthus niveus 7

Oecophoridae 164, 184

Oedemeridae 112, 113

Oeneis 186

Oeneis macounii 167

Oenistis quadra 165

Oestrus ovis 200

Ogodes costatus 208

Olibrus 106

Oligoneuria 64

Oligoneuriellidae 64

Oligota oviformis 83

OMNIVOROUS: feeding on both animal and plant food.

Omophron 76

Omophronidae 76

OOTHECAE (sing., ootheca): the case of an egg mass of certain Orthoptera.

OPERCULATE: having the form of a lid or operculum.

Orsodacninae 122

Orthoperidae 106

Orthoptera 69

Orthorrhapha 189, 199

Orussidae 215

Oryssus occidentalis 215

Oryzaephilus surinamensis 12, 104

Oscinella frit 40

OSMETERIUM (pl., osmeteria): tubular eversible gland, capable of being projected through a slit in the prothoracic segment of certain Papilionid caterpillars. 172

Osmylidae 142

Osmylus chrysops 142

Ostomidae 100

Othniidae 115

Othnius umbrosus 115

OVIPOSITOR: the tubular or valved structure by means of which the eggs are laid.

Oxyptilus periclidactylus 167

## P

Pachypasa otus 169

Pachyrrhina ferruginea 206

PAEDOGENESIS: reproduction occurring in the larval stage.

Palaecrita vernata 166

Palingenia 63

Palingeniidae 63

PALMATE: like the palm of the hand; with finger-like processes.

PALPIFER: a small sclerite bearing the maxillary palpus.

PALPIGER: a small sclerite bearing the labial palpus.

Pamphilidae 211

Pamphilium 211

Panorpa rufescens 47

Papaipema nebris 185

Papilio cresphontes 172, 181

Papilionidae 172, 181

PAPILLOSE: superficially covered with raised dots or papillae.

Paraclemensia acerifoliella 41, 151

Parasemidalis flaviceps 144

PARASITE: living on or in other animals to get nourishment from the host. 27

PARTHENOGENESIS: reproduction by direct growth of the egg without fertilization by the sperm.

Paussidae 78

Paussus kannegieteri 78

Pea weevil 121

Pear psylla 10, 138

Pectinophora gossypiella 164

PEDAL LOBES: legs that have been modified to become fleshy protuberances.

Pedilidae 114

PEDUNCULATE: set on a stalk or peduncle.

Peltodytes 48, 75

Peltoperla arcuata 59

Peltoperlinae 59

Pentatomidae 133

Penthe pimelia 110

PENULTIMATE: next to the last.

PERFORATE: a part dilated or flattened and the remaining part cylindrical.

Peridroma margaritosa 165

Peridroma saucia 6

PERINEUSTIC: spiracles in a row on each side of the body.

Periodical cicada 4, 136

Periplaneta americana 72

Periplaneta australasiae 72

Peripsoxus phacopteris 35

Perkinsiella saccharicida 6

Perla hastata 61

Perla verticalis 60

Perlidae 59, 60

Petronarcella badia 59

Phalacridae 106

Phalacrus 106

Phaloniidae 161, 176

Pharaxonatha kirshi 104

Phasmid 8

Phasmidae 72

Phellopsis obcordata 113

Phengodes 98

Phengodidae 98

Philaenus lineatus 137

Philaenus spumarius 137

Philopotamidae 147

Philopotamus 147

Phlebotrophia mathesoni 212

Photinus 97

Phryganeidae 149

Phryganidia californica 187

Phyllonistus populiella 21

Phyllomorpha laciniata 9

Phylloscelis atra 136

Phyllotominae 212

Phylloxera 139

Phylloxeridae 139

Phymata erosa fasciata 132

Phymatidae 132



# INDEX

Phytophaga destructor 189, 190, 200  
**PHYTOPHAGOUS**: feeding upon plants.  
**PIERCING AND SUCKING MOUTH PARTS**: Fig. 621

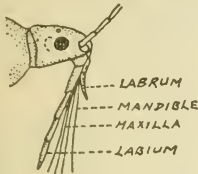


Figure 621

Pieridae 172, 182  
 Pieris napi 172  
 Pieris rapae 172  
 Pigmy crickets 69  
**PILIFERS**: the caudo-lateral projections of the labrum.  
 Fig. 622



Figure 622

Pine gall weevil 127  
 Pink bollworm 164  
**PLANIDIUM**: the newly hatched larva of some chalcids.  
**PLANTA**: the anal claspings of caterpillars.  
 Plant bug 10, 135  
**PLATYFORM**: a type of larvae with short, broad and flat body, with or without short legs. 14  
 Platyphylax 16  
 Platypodidae 128  
 Platypsyllidae 81  
 Platypsyllus castoris 81  
 Platypus compositus 128  
 Platystomidae 128  
 Plecoptera 59  
**PLEURON** (pl., pleura): the lateral region of any segment of the insect body.  
**PLICATE**: with folds.  
 Plum curculio 40  
 Plum leaf-miner 152  
 Plume moths 167  
**PLUMOSE**: feathered like a plume.  
 Plutella maculipennis 159  
 Podapion gallicola 127  
 Podisus maculiventris 6  
 Podosesia syringae 175  
 Poduridae 58  
 Polymitarciidae 63  
 Popillia japonica 4  
**PORRECT**: projecting.  
 Porthetria dispar 7, 168  
**POSTEMBRYONIC DEVELOPMENT**: the development of an insect after hatching.  
 Pothamanthidae 62  
 Potato leafhopper 137  
 Potato tuberworm 156

Potomanthus 62  
 Praying mantid 70  
 Predacious diving beetles 77  
**PREDATOR**: an animal that preys on others.  
**PREPUPA**: a quiescent instar between the end of the larval stage and the pupal stage, active but not feeding.  
 Preservatives 25, 26  
**PRESTERNUM**: a narrow anterior part of the sternum.  
**PRIMARY LARVA**: the newly hatched larva of the insects with hypermetamorphosis. See triungulin. 85  
**PRIMARY SETAE**: the setae borne on setiferous tubercles, definite in number and position.  
 Prionochaeta opaca 80  
 Prionocyphon discoideus 90  
 Prionoxystus robiniae 156  
**PROBOSCIS**: an extended mouth structure.  
 Prodoxus quinquepunctellus 175  
 Projapygidae 57  
**PROLEG**: a fleshy unsegmented abdominal leg.  
 Promachus vertebratus 199  
**PROMINENCE**: elevated part.  
**PRONOTUM**: the dorsal face of the prothorax.  
 Prosopistoma foliaceum 62  
 Prosopistomatidae 62  
**PROSTERNUM**: the ventral face of the prothorax.  
**PROSTHECA**: a mandibular sclerite set with hairs, articulated to the basalis. 80 Fig. 623



Figure 623

Prostomis mandibularis 105  
 Protentomidae 55  
 Proterhinidae 125  
 Proterhinus anthracias 125  
**PROTHORAX**: the first or anterior segment of the thorax.  
 Protoparce quinque maculata 17  
 Protoparce sexta 13, 170, 188  
**PROTRACTED**: extended.  
**PROTUBERANCE**: any elevation above the surface.  
 Protura 54  
 Proxodoxinae 151  
 Psoini 120  
 Pselaphidae 84  
 Psephenidae 92  
 Psephenus 93  
 Psephenus lecontei 92  
 Pseudo click beetles 95

**PSEUDOCULI**: a pair of organs in the head; their nature undetermined.  
**PSEUDOPOD**: a soft foot-like appendage, as on the abdomen of caterpillars.  
**PSEUDCPUPA** (in Coleoptera): the larva in a quiescent coarctate condition which is followed by the true pupa.  
 Psilocephala haemorrhoidalis 198, 208  
 Psocids 35  
 Psychidae 160, 178  
 Psychoda superba 193, 203  
 Psychodidae 193, 203, 205  
 Psylla pyricola 10, 138  
 Pteraphorus tenuidactylus 180  
 Pterocrace storeyi 143  
 Pterodontia flavipes 197  
 Pteronarcidae 59  
 Pteronidea ribesii 31, 47, 215  
 Pterophoridae 167, 169, 180  
 Pterostichus 12, 40  
 Ptiliidae 80  
 Ptilodactyla serricollis 92  
 Ptilodactylinae 92  
 Ptilostomis ocellifera 149  
 Ptinidae 119  
**PULVILLUS** (pl., pulvilli): pad-like structures between the claws.  
 Punkies 194  
**PUPA**: the resting, inactive stage of holometabolous insects, between the larva and the adult.  
 Pupae of Diptera 199  
 Pupae of Lepidoptera 173  
**PUPARIUM**: the next-to-the-last larval skin within which many maggots pupate for greater protection.  
**PUPATION**: the act of becoming a pupa; entering the resting stage.  
 Puss moth 168  
 Pygmy locust 70  
**PYGOPODS**: the appendages of the tenth abdominal segment taken collectively.  
 Pyralididae 154, 179, 180, 184, 186  
 Pyralis farinalis 154  
 Pyrausta nubilalis 54, 179  
 Pyrochroidae 114  
 Pytha niger 115  
 Pythidae 114, 115

## R

Ranatra fusca 130  
 Range caterpillar 7  
 Rape butterfly 172  
 Raphidia hermandi 140  
 Raphidia oblita 140  
 Raphidiidae 140  
**RAPTORIAL**: fitted for grasping and holding prey.  
**RASPING MOUTH PARTS**: with a file-like structure.  
 Rearing insects 26  
 Rectal tracea 11  
 Recurvaria piceailla 183  
 Reduviidae 133

# INDEX

**RETINACULUM:** tooth-like process of the mandible. Fig. 624



Figure 624

Retinodiplosis inops 190  
**RETRACTED:** drawn back or into another part.  
 Rhachicerinae 207  
 Rhagionidae 196, 197, 207  
 Rhagoletis cingulata 44  
 Rhagoletis pomonella 200  
 Rhegmoclema atrata 192, 206  
 Rhinosimus ruficollis 114  
 Rhipiceridae 93, 96  
 Rhipiphoridae 86  
 Rhipiphorus solidaginis 85, 86  
 Rhizophagidae 103  
 Rhizophagus grandis 103  
 Rhodites bicolor 21  
 Rhyacophilidae 147  
 Rhymbus ulkei 108  
 Rhynchites aeneus 127  
 Rhynchites bicolor 127  
 Rhynchitinae 127  
 Rhysodidae 75  
 Rice butterfly 167  
 Robber flies 199  
 Rose chafer 88  
 Rosy apple aphid 7  
 Round-headed apple tree borer 44  
 Round-headed borers 101  
 Rove beetles 81

## S

Sabatinka 149  
 Sabine stimulea 14, 46, 150  
 Saddlebacked slug caterpillar 14, 46, 150  
 Saddle-case makers 147  
 Sagra femorata 122  
 Sagrinae 122  
 Samia cecropia 170, 187  
 Sandalus niger 96  
 Sand flies 193, 194  
 Saperda candida 44, 101  
**SAPROPHAGUS:** feeding on dead or decaying animal and plant materials.  
**SAPROZOIC:** feeding on decaying animal matter.  
 Saturniidae 170, 187  
 Satyridae 167, 172  
 Sawfly 16  
 Saw-toothed grain beetle 12  
 Scale insects 138  
 Scaldia linearis 100, 106  
**SCANSORIAL:** fitted for climbing on hairs.  
**SCAPE:** the first or basal segment of the antenna.  
 Scaphidiidae 82  
 Scaphisoma convexum 82  
 Scarabaeidae 88, 89  
**SCARABAEIFORM:** a type of larva with U-shaped, cylindrical body and with-

out prolegs.  
 Scatopsidae 192, 206  
**SCAVENGER:** a feeder on decaying or waste matter.  
 Scenopinidae 198  
 Scenopinus fenestralis 198  
 Schoenobiinae 154  
 Schreckensteina 162  
 Schymaenidae 84  
**SCLERITE:** any piece of the insect body wall bounded by sutures.  
**SCLEROTIZATION:** the hardening of the body wall by the deposit of chitinous substances in the exocuticula.  
 Scobicia declivis 120  
 Scolytidae 126  
 Scolytus rugulosus 126  
 Scaptia sericea 110  
 Scaptini 110  
 Scythris 183  
 Scythris eboracensis 182  
**SECONDARY HAIRS:** scattered hairs which have no constant position.  
 Selandriinae 213  
**SEMI-AQUATIC:** closely related to water or partially aquatic.  
**SENSORIA:** the circular openings covered by a membrane, on the antennae or legs.  
 Separator 24  
 Serpentine miners 152  
**SETA (pl., setae):** slender hair-like appendages, hollow in structure.  
**SETAL:** of or pertaining to setae.  
**SETIFEROUS:** bearing setae.  
 Seventeen-year cicada 136  
 Sexton beetles 82  
 Sheep bot fly 200  
 Sheep louse 7  
 Shield bugs 133  
 Shining flower beetles 106  
 Shot-hole borer 126  
 Sialidae 141  
 Sialis infumata 48, 141  
 Sifter 23  
 Silpha 82  
 Silphidae 80, 82  
 Silvanini 104  
 Silverfish 30, 56  
**SIMPLE METAMORPHOSIS:** same as gradual metamorphosis.  
 Simuliidae 192, 203  
 Simulium pecuarum 14  
 Simulium pictipes 192  
 Simulium venustum 53, 192, 203  
 Sinodendron cylindricum 87  
**SINUOUS:** curving in and out.  
 Siphonuridae 66  
 Siphonurus alternatus 66  
 Siphonaptera 45, 50  
 Siricidae 216  
 Sisyra umbrata 142  
 Sisyridae 48, 142  
 Sitophilus granarius 127  
 Sitotroga cerealella 151, 183  
 Skippers 171  
 Slickers 30  
 Slug-caterpillars 150

Smicripinae 107  
 Smicrips palmicola 107  
 Sminthuridae 59  
 Sminthurides lepus 59  
 Smoky alderfly 141  
 Snakeflies 140  
 Snipe flies 196  
 Snowflea 58  
 Snowy tree cricket 7, 71  
 Soft winged flower beetles 99  
 Soldier beetles 97  
 Soldier flies 195  
 Spanworms 165, 166  
 Sparnopolius fulvus 42, 199  
**SPATULATE:** broad and rounded at the tip, more slender at the base; spoon-shaped.  
 Spercheinae 118  
 Spercheus 117  
 Spercheus emarginatus 118  
 Sphaeridiinae 117  
 Sphindidae 107  
 Sphindus americanus 107  
 Sohingidae 170, 171, 188  
 Sphinx caterpillar 170  
 Sphinx moth 170  
**SPINE:** a large setae arising from a calyx or a cup by which it is articulated to the cuticula.  
**SPINNERET:** the opening of silk glands.  
**SPINULOSE:** set with small spines.  
**SPIRACULAR FURROW:** a furrow situated on the cephalic margin of the movable abdominal segments of lepidopterous pupae and cephalad of the spiracle. It is frequently extended almost to the meson on both the dorsal and ventral aspects.  
**SPIRACLE:** the opening of the respiratory organ.  
 Spittle-bugs 137  
 Spogostylum albofasciatum 209  
 Spongilla-flies 142  
 Spring rose gall 21  
 Springtail 58  
 Spruce budworm 162  
 Spruce leaf-miner 183  
**SPUR:** a spine-like appendage of cuticula, connected to the body wall by a joint; generally on the tibia.  
 Squash bug 134  
 Squash-vine borer 156  
**STADIUM:** similar to stage.  
 Stag beetles 87  
**STAGE:** the interval between moults.  
 Staphylinidae 51, 81, 83  
 Stegobium paniceum 119  
 Steninea 83  
 Stenopelmatinae 71  
 Stenopelmatus longispina 71  
 Stenophylax 16, 148  
 Stenus 83  
**STERNUM:** the underside of the thorax, between the coxal cavities.  
 Sthenopsis thule 178  
 Stictocephala 39, 137

# INDEX

Stiletto flies 198, 208  
 Stink bug 39, 133  
**STIPES** (pl., stipetes): the basal stalk of the maxilla.  
 Stoneflies 34  
 Storehouse beetle 119  
 Stratiomyidae 195, 206  
**STRIDULATING ORGAN**: an organ producing sound by rubbing two parts.  
 Fig. 625

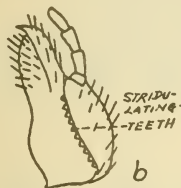


Figure 625

*Strongylogaster annulosus* 213

**STYLET**: a small style or stiff process.

**STYLI** (sing., stylus): the small appendages on the under side of the abdomen in *Thysanura*.  
 Fig. 626

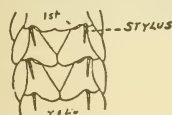


Figure 626

**STYLIFORM**: ending in a long slender point.

**SUBANAL APPENDAGE**: the appendage beneath the anal segment.

**SUBIMAGO**: a winged stage in Mayflies just after emergence from the pupa and before the last moult.

**SUBMENTUM**: a sclerite of the labium next to the mentum. See labium.  
 Fig. 627

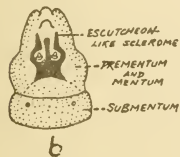


Figure 627

**SUBPRIMARY SETAE**: the primary setae found in later instars but not in the first.

**SUBTERRANEAN**: existing beneath the surface of the soil.

**SUBULATE**: awl-shaped; linear at base, attenuate at tip.

Sucking lice 37

Sugarcane leafhopper 6

**SULCATE**: with deep grooves.

Sun-moths 158, 162

**SURANAL PROCESS**: the process above the anal segment.

Swallow bug 132

Swallowtail butterflies 172

Sweeping net 22

Sychroini 113

Symphyleona 58

*Synchroa punctata* 113

Syrian silkworm 169

## T

Tabanidae 195, 207

*Tabanus atratus* 195

*Tabanus lasiophthalmus* 207

*Tagoperla media* 60

Tarnished plant bug 135

**TARSI** (sing., tarsus): see leg.

*Tegeticula* 151

*Tenebrio molitor* 116

Tenebrionidae 113, 115, 116

*Tenebroides mauritanicus* 100

*Tenodera aridifolia sinensis* 70

Tent caterpillars 169

Tenthredinidae 212-215

*Tenthredo* 213

**TERGITE**: dorsal sclerite of a segment.

**TERGUM**: the dorsal part of a segment.

*Tetraonyx* 85

Tettigidae 70

Tettigonidae 71

Therevidae 198, 208

*Thermobia domestica* 28, 56

Thorn skeletonizer 164

Thrips 38

Throscidae 95

*Throscus* 95

*Thyatira derasa* 165

*Thyatiridae* 165

Thyrididae 160

*Thyridopteryx ephemeraeformis* 16, 19, 160, 178

Thysanoptera 38

*Thysanura* 55

**TIBIA** (pl., tibiae): the apical segments of the leg.

**TIBIOTARSUS**: the segments of the tibia and the tarsus when fused together.  
 Fig. 628

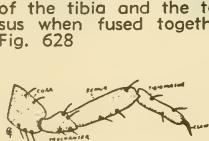


Figure 628

*Tipula eluta* 191

Tipulidae 191, 194, 206

*Tischeria malifoliella* 43, 153

Tischeriidae 153, 177

Toad bugs 130

Tobacco hornworm 170, 188

Tomato fruitworm 13, 165

Tomato hornworm 13, 17

*Tomostethus bardus* 213

*Tomoxia bidentata* 118

**TONGUE** (the hypopharynx): a sensory structure attached to the upper surface of the labium.

Tooth necked fungus beetles 102

*Topoperla* 34

Tortoise beetles 125

Tortricidae 162, 176, 177

*Toxomeris politus* 189, 200

**TRACHEA** (pl., tracheae): ringed tubes belonging to the respiratory system.

**TRACHEAL GILLS**: the flattened or hair-like processes in aquatic larvae through which oxygen is absorbed from the water.  
 Fig. 629

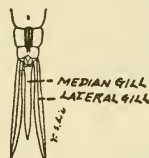


Figure 629

*Trachykele blondeli* 94

Tree-cricket 71

Treehoppers 137

*Tremex columba* 216

*Trialeurodes vaporariorum* 139

*Trienodes flavescens* 49, 148

*Tribolium confusum* 116

Trichoptera 52, 146

Tricorythodes allectus 6

*Tricorythus* 65

Tridactylinae 69

*Triodopteryx ephemeraeformis* 160

**TRIORDINAL CROCHETS**: hooks of the prolegs when in three different lengths but arranged in a single row.

*Triphleps tricolor* 39

**TRIUNGULIN**: the first instar of Meloidae, Manti-spidae and Strepsiptera. 85

**TROCHANTER**: a segment of the leg, between the coxa and femur.  
 Fig. 630



Figure 630

Tiger beetle 76

*Tinea pellionella* 158, 176

Tineidae 158, 176

Tingitidae 134

# INDEX

Trogidae 88  
 Trox scaber 88  
**TUBERCULATE:** covered with tubercules.  
**TUBERCULE:** a small solid pimple-like structure.  
 Tupula eluta 45  
 Tussock moth 13  
 Tychius picirostris 126

## U

Ululodes hyalina 145  
**UNIORDINAL CROCHETS:** hooks of the prolegs when of uniform length and arranged in one circle.  
 Utethesia 166

## V

Valentinia glandulella 164  
 Vanessa 170  
 Variable hen louse 34  
 Variegated cutworm 165  
 Veliidae 132  
**VENTER:** the entire under surface.  
**VERMIFORM:** worm-like larvae.  
 Vermileo 196  
 Vespa maculata 31, 40, 46, 51, 211  
 Vespidae 211

## W

Walkeriana ovilla 138  
 Walkingstick 72

**WART:** the enlarged common base of a group of setae.  
 Water beetles 77  
 Water boatman 129  
 Water-measurers 131  
 Water scorpion 130  
 Water-striders 131  
 Water tigers 77

**WEEVIL:** a larva boring in fruit; usually reserved for Coleoptera and especially for the Rhynchophora.  
 Western cricket 10  
 Western 12-spotted cucumber beetle 6  
 Western water bug 9  
 Wheel bug 133  
 Whirligig beetles 74  
 Whitefly 139  
 White ants 36  
 White grub 88

**WING PADS:** the encased undeveloped wings of nymphs. Fig. 631

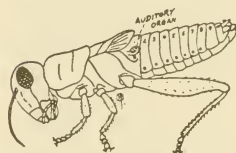


Figure 631

Wireworms 95  
 Woolly bear caterpillar 186  
 Wool sower gall 21

## X

X. A. A. D. mixture 26  
 X. A. mixture 25  
 Xiphydria 216  
 Xiphyriidae 216  
 Xyelidae 212  
 Xyelid sawflies 212  
 Xylophagidae 196, 207  
**XYLOPHAGOUS:** feeding on wooden tissues.  
 Xylophagus lugens 196, 207

## Y

Yellow-necked caterpillar 168  
 Young 3  
 Yponomeutidae 159, 165, 179, 182, 183

## Z

Zanosemata electa 53  
 Zenoa picea 93  
 Zeugophora scutellaris 122  
 Zeuzera pyrina 163, 179  
 Zygoptera 32, 67







**THE IMMATURE  
INSECTS**